# **OnCell MX-ROS Series User Manual**

## Version 1.0, September 2023

www.moxa.com/products

**Models covered by this user manual:** OnCell G4300-LTE4 Series OnCell G5708-5G Series



#### **OnCell MX-ROS Series User Manual**

The software described in this manual is furnished under a license agreement and may be used only in accordance with the terms of that agreement.

#### **Copyright Notice**

© 2023 Moxa Inc. All rights reserved.

#### Trademarks

The MOXA logo is a registered trademark of Moxa Inc. All other trademarks or registered marks in this manual belong to their respective manufacturers.

#### Disclaimer

- Information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Moxa.
- Moxa provides this document as is, without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including, but not limited to, its particular purpose. Moxa reserves the right to make improvements and/or changes to this manual, or to the products and/or the programs described in this manual, at any time.
- Information provided in this manual is intended to be accurate and reliable. However, Moxa assumes no
  responsibility for its use, or for any infringements on the rights of third parties that may result from its
  use.
- This product might include unintentional technical or typographical errors. Changes are periodically
  made to the information herein to correct such errors, and these changes are incorporated into new
  editions of the publication.

## **Technical Support Contact Information**

www.moxa.com/support

## **Table of Contents**

1.	Introduction	7
	Overview	7
	Package Checklist	7
	Features	7
	Supported Features List	8
2.	Getting Started	10
	RS-232 Console Configuration (115200, None, 8, 1, VT100)	
	Using Telnet to Access the Industrial Secure Router's Console	13
	Using a Web Browser to Configure the Industrial Secure Router	14
3.	Device Summary	17
	Function Introduction	
	Device Summary	
	Model Information	
	Panel Status	
	Event Summary (Last 3 Days)	21
	CPU Usage History (%)	
4.	System	23
	System Management	23
	Information Settings	
	Firmware Upgrade	25
	Software Package Management	
	Configuration Backup and Restore	
	Account Management	
	User Accounts	
	Password Policy	
	License Management	
	Management Interface	
	User Interface	
	Hardware Interface	
	SNMP	
	Time	-
	System Time	
	NTP/SNTP Server	
	Power Management	
	General	
	Scheduling	
	SMS	
	General	••••••
	Remote Control List	
	Send SMS	
	GNSS	
	General	
	GNSS Client	
	GNSS Server	
	Status	
	Setting Check	
	Cellular	
	General	
	SIM Settings	
	GuaranLink	
	Status	
	Serial	
	Port Settings	
	Operation Mode	
	Data Packing	
	Status	
	Serial Data Logs	

5.	Network Configuration Ports	
	Port Settings	
	Layer 2 Switching VLAN	
	VLAN MAC Address Table	
	Multicast	
	Network Interface	
	LAN	
	WAN	
	Bridge Group Interface	
~	Secondary IP	
6.	Redundancy	
	Layer 3 Redundancy	
	WAN Redundancy	
	Settings	
7.	Status	
/.	Network Service	
	General Settings	
	DHCP	
	MAC-based IP Assignment	
	Port-based IP Assignment	
	Lease Table	
	Dynamic DNS	
8.	Routing	
0.	Unicast Route	
	Static Routes	
	Multicast Route	
	Multicast Route Settings	
	Static Multicast Route	
	Broadcast Forwarding	
9.	NAT (Network Address Translation)	
	NAT Concept	
	1-to-1 NAT Overview	
	1-to-1 NAT	
	NAT Loopback	
	Bidirectional 1-to-1 NAT	
	Double NAT	
	N-to-1 NAT	
	PAT (Port Address Translation)	
	Advance	
10.		
	Overview	167
	Create a New Object	167
	Create an IP Address and Subnet Object	
	Create a Network Service Object	170
	Create an Industrial Application Service Object	
	Create a User-defined Service Object	173
	Modify an Existing Object	176
	Delete an Object	176
	Search for an Object	
11.	Firewall	178
	Policy Concept	178
	Layer 2 Policy	179
	Create a New Layer 2 Policy	
	Layer 3 - 7 Policy	183
	Create a New Layer 3 - 7 Policy	184
	Malformed Packets	187
	Session Control	188

	DoS (Denial of Service) Policy	
12.	VPN (Virtual Private Network)	.193
	Overview	. 193
	IPsec Configuration	. 194
	Global Settings	. 194
	IPsec Settings	. 195
	IPsec Use Case Demonstration	. 202
	IPsec Status	. 206
	Examples of Typical VPN Applications	. 206
	Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Pre-Shared Key	. 206
	Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Juniper systems	. 208
	Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Cisco systems	. 209
13.	Certificate Management	.211
	Local Certificate	. 211
	Import a Certificate	. 212
	Import a Certificate From CSR	. 213
	Import a Certificate from PKCS#12	. 214
	Trusted CA Certificate	. 215
	Import a CA Certificate	. 215
	Certificate Signing Request	. 215
	Key Pair Generate	. 216
	CSR Generate	. 217
14.	Security	.219
	Device Security	. 219
	Login Policy	. 220
	Trusted Access	. 221
	SSH & SSL	. 223
	Authentication	. 224
	Login Authentication	. 225
	RADIUS	. 225
	MXview Alert Notification	. 226
	Security Notification Setting	. 226
	Security Status	. 228
	Diagnostics	229
15.		
15.	System Status	
15.	-	. 229
15.	System Status	229 230
15.	System Status Utilization	229 230 230
15.	System Status Utilization Network Status	229 230 230 230
15.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics	229 230 230 230 230 236
15.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP	229 230 230 230 236 237
15.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table	229 230 230 230 236 237 237
15.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications	229 230 230 230 236 237 237 238
15.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table. Event Logs and Notifications Event Log.	229 230 230 230 236 237 237 238 242
15.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications Event Log Event Log Event Notifications	229 230 230 230 236 237 237 238 242 248
15.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications Event Log Event Log Syslog	229 230 230 230 236 237 237 237 238 242 248 250
15.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications Event Log Event Notifications Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform.	229 230 230 230 236 237 237 238 242 248 250 253
15.	System Status. Utilization. Network Status Network Statistics. LLDP. ARP Table. Event Logs and Notifications Event Log. Event Notifications. Syslog. SNMP Trap/Inform. Email Settings.	229 230 230 236 237 237 238 242 248 250 253 254
15.	System Status. Utilization. Network Status Network Statistics LLDP. ARP Table. Event Logs and Notifications Event Log. Event Notifications. Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform. Email Settings. SMS Settings.	229 230 230 236 237 237 237 238 242 248 250 255
15.	System Status. Utilization. Network Status Network Statistics LLDP. ARP Table. Event Logs and Notifications Event Log. Event Notifications. Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform. Email Settings. SMS Settings. Tools.	229 230 230 236 237 237 237 238 242 248 250 253 255 255
Α.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications Event Log Event Notifications Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform Email Settings SMS Settings Tools Diagnostic Support Ping	229 230 230 236 237 237 237 238 242 248 250 253 255 255 256 <b> 258</b>
	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications Event Log Event Notifications Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform Email Settings. SMS Settings Tools Diagnostic Support Ping MIB Groups Account Privileges List	229 230 230 230 237 237 237 237 238 242 248 250 253 254 255 256 <b> 258</b> <b> 259</b>
А. В.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP. ARP Table. Event Logs and Notifications Event Log Event Notifications. Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform. Email Settings. SMS Settings. Tools. Diagnostic Support Ping. MIB Groups. Account Privileges List. User Role Privileges	229 230 230 236 237 237 237 237 238 242 248 250 254 255 255 256 <b> 258</b> <b> 259</b> 259
А.	System Status Utilization	229 230 230 237 237 237 237 237 238 242 248 250 254 255 255 256 <b> 258</b> <b> 259</b> 262
А. В.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications Event Log Event Notifications Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform Email Settings SMS Settings Tools Diagnostic Support Ping <b>MIB Groups</b> Account Privileges List User Role Privileges List Installation	229 230 230 237 237 237 237 237 238 242 242 248 250 255 255 255 256 <b> 259</b> <b> 262</b> 262
А. В.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table. Event Logs and Notifications Event Log. Event Notifications Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform. Email Settings SMS Settings Tools Diagnostic Support Ping <b>MIB Groups</b> . Account Privileges List User Role Privileges Security Guidelines Installation Physical Installation	229 230 230 237 237 237 237 237 237 237 237 237 237 237 237 255 255 255 255 255 255 256 <b> 259</b> 262 262 262
А. В.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications Event Log Event Notifications Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform Email Settings SMS Settings Tools Diagnostic Support Ping MIB Groups Account Privileges List User Role Privileges Installation Physical Installation Account Management	229 230 230 237 237 237 237 237 237 238 242 242 248 250 253 255 255 256 <b> 258</b> <b> 259</b> <b> 262</b> 262 262 262
А. В.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications Event Log and Notifications Syslog Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform Email Settings SMS Settings SMS Settings Tools Diagnostic Support Ping <b>MIB Groups</b> <b>Account Privileges List</b> User Role Privileges List User Role Privileges Security Guidelines Installation Physical Installation Account Management Vulnerable Network Ports	229 230 230 237 237 237 237 237 238 242 248 250 253 254 255 255 256 <b> 258</b> <b> 259</b> 259 <b> 262</b> 262 262 262 262
А. В.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications Event Log Event Notifications Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform Email Settings SMS Settings Tools Diagnostic Support Ping <b>MIB Groups</b> Account Privileges List User Role Privileges Security Guidelines Installation Physical Installation Account Management Vulnerable Network Ports Operation	229 230 230 237 237 237 237 237 238 242 242 248 255 255 255 255 256 <b> 259</b> <b> 259</b> <b> 262</b> 262 262 262 263
А. В.	System Status Utilization Network Status Network Statistics LLDP ARP Table Event Logs and Notifications Event Log and Notifications Syslog Syslog SNMP Trap/Inform Email Settings SMS Settings SMS Settings Tools Diagnostic Support Ping <b>MIB Groups</b> <b>Account Privileges List</b> User Role Privileges List User Role Privileges Security Guidelines Installation Physical Installation Account Management Vulnerable Network Ports	229 230 230 237 237 237 237 237 237 238 242 248 255 255 255 255 256 <b> 258</b> <b> 259</b> 262 262 262 262 263 264

Welcome to the Moxa OnCell Industrial Secure Cellular Router Series. These all-in-one Firewall/NAT/VPN secure cellular routers are designed to connect Ethernet and serial devices to the Internet with network IP security.

## **Overview**

As the world's network and information technology matures, cellular connectivity is becoming a major communications interface in many industrial communications and IoT applications.

The OnCell Secure Cellular Router Series is a set of highly integrated industrial multi-port secure routers with firewall/NAT/VPN and managed Layer 2 switch functions. These devices are designed for Ethernetbased security applications in critical remote control or monitoring networks. These secure cellular routers provide an electronic security perimeter to protect critical cyber assets including substations in power applications, pump-and-treat systems in water stations, distributed control systems in oil and gas applications, and ETC systems in transportation.

To enhance industrial reliability, high-level EMS and wide-temperature support give the OnCell Series the highest level of device stability for any demanding environment. In addition to dual-SIM GuaranLink, the OnCell Series supports WAN network redundancy to ensure uninterrupted connectivity. The OnCell Series also comes with a 3-in-1 serial port for serial communication over LTE cellular networks to enable data exchange with serial/Ethernet devices.

## **Package Checklist**

The Industrial Secure Routers are shipped with the following items. If any of these items are missing or damaged, please contact your customer service representative for assistance.

- 1 Moxa Industrial Secure Router
- DIN-rail mounting kit (attached to the Industrial Secure Router's rear panel by default)
- Quick installation guide (printed)
- Warranty card

## **Features**

- High-performance global LTE/5G router with full GbE ports
- All-in-one firewall/NAT/VPN/router/switch
- Powerful power management tools for wake-up scheduling
- Visualize OT security with the MXsecurity management software (OnCell G4300-LTE4 only)
- Secure remote access tunnel with VPN
- GuaranLink technology and redundant SIMs for reliable cellular connectivity
- Easy network setup with Network Address Translation (NAT)
- Precise GNSS for location-based application
- Security features based on IEC 62443/NERC CIP
- Supports secure boot for checking system integrity

# **Supported Features List**

The features supported vary across different OnCell Secure Cellular Router Series. Refer to the comparison table below for a complete overview of all supported features and functions.

Configuration Section	Function	OnCell	OnCell
		G4300-LTE4	G5708-5G
Device Summary		Yes	Yes
System		Yes	Yes
System Management		Yes	Yes
	Information Settings	Yes	Yes
	Firmware Upgrade	Yes	Yes
	Software Package Management	Yes	Yes
	Configuration Backup and Restore	Yes	Yes
Account Management		Yes	Yes
Management Interface		Yes	Yes
	User Interface	Yes	Yes
	Hardware Interface	Yes	Yes
	SNMP	Yes	Yes
	MXsecurity	Yes	-
Time		Yes	Yes
	System Time	Yes	Yes
	NTP/SNTP Server	Yes	Yes
Power Management		Yes	-
SMS		Yes	Yes
GNSS		Yes	-
Setting Check		Yes	Yes
Cellular		Yes	Yes
Serial		Yes	Yes
Network Configuration		Yes	Yes
	Ports	Yes	Yes
	Layer 2 Switching	Yes	Yes
	Network Interface	Yes	Yes
Redundancy		Yes	Yes
	Layer 3 Redundancy	Yes	Yes
	WAN Redundancy	Yes	Yes
Network Service		Yes	Yes
	DHCP	Yes	Yes
	Dynamic DNS (DDNS)	Yes	Yes
Routing		Yes	Yes
	Unicast Route	Yes	Yes
	Multicast Route	Yes	Yes
	Broadcast Forwarding	Yes	Yes
NAT		Yes	Yes
Object Management		Yes	Yes
Firewall		Yes	Yes
	Layer 2 Policy	Yes	Yes
	Layer 3-7 Policy	Yes	Yes
	Malformed Packet	Yes	Yes
	Session Control	Yes	Yes
	DoS Policy	Yes	Yes
VPN		Yes	Yes
	IPsec VPN	Yes	Yes
Certificate Management		Yes	Yes
	Local Certificate	Yes	Yes
	Trusted CA Certificate	Yes	Yes
	Certificate Signing	Yes	Yes
Security		Yes	Yes
	Device Security	Yes	Yes
	Authentication	Yes	Yes

Configuration Section	Function	OnCell G4300-LTE4	OnCell G5708-5G
	MXview Alert Notification	Yes	-
Diagnostics		Yes	Yes
	System Status	Yes	Yes
	Network Status	Yes	Yes
	Event Log and Notifications	Yes	Yes
	Event Notifications	Yes	Yes
	Tools	Yes	Yes

This chapter explains how to access the Industrial Secure Router for the first time. There are three ways to access the router: (1) serial console, (2) Telnet console, and (3) web browser. The serial console connection method, which requires using a short serial cable to connect the Industrial Secure Router to a PC's COM port, can be used if you do not know the Industrial Secure Router's IP address. The Telnet console and web browser connection methods can be used to access the Industrial Secure Router over an Ethernet LAN, or over the Internet. A web browser can be used to perform all monitoring and administration functions, but the serial console and Telnet console only provide basic functions.

# RS-232 Console Configuration (115200, None, 8, 1, VT100)



## ATTENTION

We strongly suggest that you do NOT use more than one connection method at the same time. Following this advice will allow you to maintain better control over the configuration of your Industrial Secure Router.



#### NOTE

We recommend using Moxa PComm Terminal Emulator, which can be downloaded free of charge from Moxa's website.

Before running PComm Terminal Emulator, use a USB-C-to-DB9-F (or USB-C-to-DB25-F) cable to connect the Industrial Secure Router's RS-232 console port to your PC's COM port (generally COM1 or COM2, depending on how your system is set up).

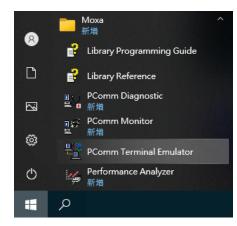


#### ΝΟΤΕ

We recommend using the Moxa CBL-USBCF9-GY-150 console cable, which can be purchased separately.

After installing PComm Terminal Emulator, perform the following steps to access the RS-232 console utility.

1. From the Windows desktop, click Start > Moxa > PComm Terminal Emulator.



2. Click **Open** in the Port Manager menu to open a new connection.

📴 PComm Terminal Emulator –				Х			
Profile	Port Manager	Help					
-	Open	Ctrl+Alt+O	C 2B HEX				

 The Communication Parameter page of the Property window will appear. Select the appropriate COM port from the Serial Parameters list and configure the following values: Baud Rate: 115200

Data Bits: 8, Parity: None Stop Bits: 1.

Property			×
Communication Para	meter Terminal	File Transfer Capturing	1
Protoc	1	•	
COM1	Baud rate:	115200 👻	
		User defined	
	Data bits:	8 💌	
	Parity:	None 💌	
	Stop bits:	1 💌	
	Flow control:	RTS/CTS     DTR/DSR     XON/XOFF	
	RTS state:	⊙ ON C OFF	
	DTR state:	○ ON ○ OFF	
Default		OK Canc	el

4. Click the **Terminal** tab, select **VT100** for Terminal Type, then click **OK** to continue.

Property		×
Communication Parameter Terminal	File Transfer	Capturing
Vindow Size       Size:     80     x     25       History depth:     25	(col x row) (unit: row)	
Transmit Local echo Send 'Enter' key as: CR-LF	<b>–</b>	
Receive       CR translation:       No Cha       LF translation:       No Cha       ✓       Enable auto line wrap		
Default	ОК	Cancel

5. The Console screen will appear. Press Enter to input the login account (admin or user) and press Enter again to jump to the Password field. Enter the console password, or if no password has been configured before, enter the default password "moxa" and press Enter.

🔂 C	:OM2,115200,None,8,1,VT100		
DTR RTS	login: admin Password:	MOXA EDR-G9010-VPN-2MGSFP Series	v2.0 build 22070117
	Firewall/VPN Router	55149#	
State:	OPEN CTS DSR RI DCD Rea	dy TX:12 RX:237	

6. Enter a question mark (?) to display the command list.

Firewall/VPN Router		
rs quit	<ul> <li>Exit Command Line Interface</li> </ul>	
exit	- Exit Command Line Interface	
reload	- Halt and Perform a Cold Restart	
terminal	- Configure Terminal Page Length	
copy	- Import or Export File	
config-file	<ul> <li>configuration file</li> </ul>	
no	<ul> <li>Negate a command or set its defaults</li> </ul>	
package	<ul> <li>Control package install/upgrade/uninstall</li> </ul>	
save	- Save Running Configuration to Local Storage	
ping	- Send Echo Messages	
clear	- Clear Information	
show	- Show System Information	
configure	- Enter Configuration Mode	
sslcertgen	- Generate SSL certificate.	
sshkeygen	- Generate SSH host key.	
Firewall/VPN Router	55149#	

The following table lists the commands that can be used when the Industrial Secure Router is in console (serial or Telnet) mode:

#### **Admin Account Commands**

Command	Description
quit	Exit the Command Line Interface
exit	Exit the Command Line Interface
reload	Halt and perform a cold restart
terminal	Configure the terminal page length
сору	Import or export a file
config-file	Configure a file
no	Negate a command or reset to its defaults
save	Save the running configuration to flash
ping	Send echo messages
tcpdump	Dump traffic on a network
clear	Clear information
show	Show system information
configure	Enter Configuration Mode
sslcertgen	Generate a SSL certificate
sshkeygen	Generate a SSH host key

## Using Telnet to Access the Industrial Secure Router's Console

You may use Telnet to access the Industrial Secure Router's console utility over a network. To access the device's functions over the network (by either Telnet or a web browser) from a PC host that is connected to the same LAN as the Industrial Secure Router, you need to make sure that the PC host and the Industrial Secure Router are on the same logical subnet. To do this, check your PC host's IP address and subnet mask. By default, the LAN IP address is 192.168.127.254 and the Industrial subnet mask is 255.255.255.0 (for a Class C subnet). If you do not change these values, and your PC host's subnet mask is 255.255.0.0, then its IP address must have the form 192.168.xxx.xxx. On the other hand, if your PC host's subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.0, then its IP address must have the form, 192.168.127.xxx.

## NOTE

To use the Industrial Secure Router's management and monitoring functions from a PC host connected to the same LAN as the Industrial Secure Router, you must make sure that the PC host and the Industrial Secure Router are connected to the same logical subnet.

## NOTE

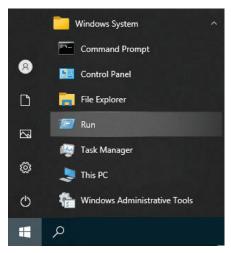
Before accessing the console utility via Telnet, first connect one of the Industrial Secure Router's RJ45 Ethernet LAN ports to your Ethernet LAN, or directly to your PC's Ethernet card (NIC). You can use either a straight-through or cross-over Ethernet cable.

#### NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router's default LAN IP address is 192.168.127.254.

Perform the following steps to access the console utility via Telnet.

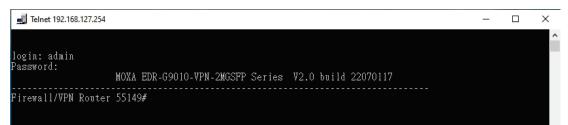
1. Click Start > Windows System > Run from the Windows desktop.



2. Enter "telnet 192.168.127.254" and click **OK** to connect to the Industrial Secure Router's IP address. You may also issue the Telnet command from the MS-DOS prompt.

🗐 Run	×
Ø	Type the name of a program, folder, document, or Internet resource, and Windows will open it for you.
Open:	telnet 192.168.127.254 ~
	OK Cancel Browse

 The Console login screen will appear. Enter the login account (admin or user) and press Enter to jump to the Password field. Enter the console password, or if no password has been configured before, enter the default password "moxa" and press Enter.



4. Enter a question mark (?) to display the command list.

🗾 Telnet 192.168.127.254		_	$\times$
Firewall/VPN Router	55149#		
quit	- Exit Command Line Interface		
exit	– Exit Command Line Interface		
reload	– Halt and Perform a Cold Restart		
terminal	– Configure Terminal Page Length		
сору	- Import or Export File		
config-file	- configuration file		
no	– Negate a command or set its defaults		
package	- Control package install/upgrade/uninstall		
save	- Save Running Configuration to Local Storage		
ping	- Send Echo Messages		
clear	- Clear Information		
show	– Show System Information		
configure	- Enter Configuration Mode		
sslcertgen	- Generate SSL certificate.		
sshkevgen	– Generate SSH host key.		
Firewall/VPN Router			

# Using a Web Browser to Configure the Industrial Secure Router

The Industrial Secure Router's web browser interface provides a convenient way to modify the router's configuration and access the built-in monitoring and network administration functions. The recommended web browser is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 with JVM (Java Virtual Machine) installed.



#### NOTE

To use the Industrial Secure Router's management and monitoring functions from a PC host connected to the same LAN as the Industrial Secure Router, you must make sure that the PC host and the Industrial Secure Router are connected to the same logical subnet.

## NOTE

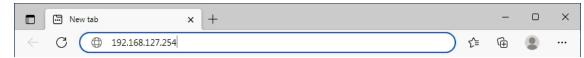
Before accessing the Industrial Secure Router's web browser, first connect one of the Industrial Secure Router's RJ45 Ethernet LAN ports to your Ethernet LAN, or directly to your PC's Ethernet card (NIC). You can use either a straight-through or cross-over Ethernet cable.

## NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router's default LAN IP address is 192.168.127.254.

Perform the following steps to access the Industrial Secure Router's web browser interface.

1. Open a web browser and type the Industrial Secure Router's LAN IP address (**192.168.127.254**) in the address bar and press **Enter**.



 The web login page will open. Enter the username (Admin or User) and password (the same as the Console password) and click LOG IN to continue. Enter the default password "moxa" if a password has not been set yet.



You may need to wait a few moments for the web interface to appear. If you have logged in before, a system message will appear showing the details of the last successful login. Click **CLOSE** to close this message.

System Message	
Welcome admin Your last successful login was: 11/14/2022 14:42:27 Mon.	S
	CLOSE

After successfully connecting to the router, the Device Summary screen will automatically appear. Use the menu tree on the left side of the window to open the function pages to access each of the router's functions.

	ell-G4302-LTE4-AU															, admin
Q Search for a function	Device Summary															
Device Summary	Model Information		MAC Address			Panel Stat										:
N <sup>®</sup> Cellular	OnCell-G4302-LTE4-AU Name OnCell Cellular Router 00000		00:01:02:03:04:01 Serial Number MOXA00000000	5		PWR1	PWR2	STATE	USB	SIM1	SIM2	CELL	LTE	GNSS	SERIAL	VPN
Serial	Location Device Location		Firmware Version V3.0 build 22121	522				1						1		
Redundancy	LAN IP Address 192.168.127.254		System Uptime 0d0h20m52s					Link Up Po	rts				Link	k Down Ports		
	WAN IP Address 0.0.0.0															EXPAN
	·															
• NAT Object Management	Cellular Status				2022/11/14 14:45:57 😋	System Ev	ent Summ	<b>ary</b> (Last 3 d	ays)							
Firewall		•	•	•	•											
	SIM	Singal	Register	Connection	Internet			0						0		
Certificate Management	Cellular Module     Enabled     Cellular Cerrier		Cellular SIM SIM 1					Critical						Error		
Security			Phone Number											•		
Diagnostics	Cellular Mode     Cellular Band		IMEI  IMSI					0 Warning						0 Notice		
			 Cellular IP Address					warning						Nonce		
	Cellular Singal															

In this chapter, we explain how to access the Industrial Secure Router's configuration options, perform monitoring, and use administration functions. There are three ways to access these functions: (1) RS-232 console, (2) Telnet console, and (3) web browser.

The web browser is the most user-friendly way to configure the Industrial Secure Router since you can both monitor the Industrial Secure Router and use administration functions from the web browser. An RS-232 or Telnet console connection only provides basic functions. In this chapter, we use the web browser to introduce the Industrial Secure Router's configuration and monitoring functions.

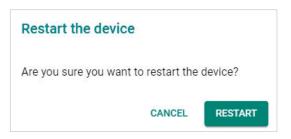
## **Function Introduction**

	-G4302-LTE4-AU													Hi,	admin : 56
Q Search for a function	Device Summary														Ĭ
Device Summary     System     Cellular     System     Cellular     Sertal     Sustandancy     V     Network Configuration     V     System     Network Service     V     System     Sy	Model Information Product Model Oncelle 42492-LT2-4.0U Name Oncell Collare Router 00000 Location Device Location LAN for Address 192 168:127.254 Water Address 0.0.00	MAC Address 0001102,033.64.05 Benti Number MOXXA00000000 Firmmare Version V10 & belief 22121522 Bystem Liptime & delte/20m52a	2		Panel Statu PWR1	IS PWR2	STATE 1 Link Up Por	USB USB	Sim1	SIM2	CELL	UTE Link	GNSS 1 Down Ports	SERIAL	VPN
► NAT Object Management	Cellular Status			2022/11/14 14:53:56 С	System Eve	ent Summa	<b>ary</b> (Last 3 da	iys)							
Firewall V	•	••	•	•											
¶⊱vpn ∽	SIM Si Cellular Module	ngal Register Cellular SIM	Connection	Internet			0						0		
🔄 Certificate Management 🗸 🗸	Enabled	SIM 1					Critical						Error		
🕀 Security 🗸 🗸	Cellular Carrier	Phone Number													
🕎 Diagnostics 🗸 🗸	Cellular Mode	IMEI					6						0		
	Cellular Band	IMSI					Warning						Notice		
	Cellular Singal	 Cellular IP Address 											View	All System Eve	nt Logs →

- 1. Clicking  $\blacksquare$  in the top-left will close or expand the function menu.
- 2. Enter the name of a function in the **Search Bar** to quickly find a specific function.
- 3. Click on a function name in the Function Menu on the left-hand side to view or configure the function.
- 4. All the configuration options and information of the selected function will be shown here.
- 5. This shows the name of the logged in user.
- 6. Clicking in the top-right will expand the drop-down menu shown below.

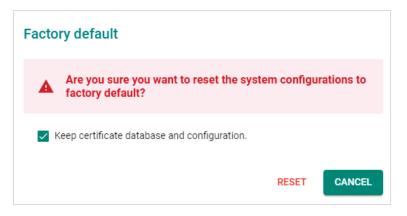
Ϋ́	Reboot
Ð	Reset to Defaults
€	Log Out

#### Reboot



Click **RESTART** to reboot the Industrial Secure Router.

#### **Reset to Defaults**



The **Reset to Defaults** option gives users a quick way of restoring the Industrial Secure Router's configuration settings to their factory default values. This function is available in both the console utility (serial or Telnet) and the web browser interface.

Check the **Keep certificate database and configuration** option to keep certificate database and configuration information. Leaving this option unchecked will delete all information on the device and reset everything to its factory default value.

Click **RESET** to reset the Industrial Secure Router to the factory default settings. Be aware that all your configuration settings will be permanently deleted.



#### NOTE

For security reasons, the device should be reset to factory default settings and all stored data should be erased before decommissioning the device.

## NOTE

After resetting the device, you will need to use the default network settings to re-establish a web-browser or Telnet connection to your Industrial Secure Router.

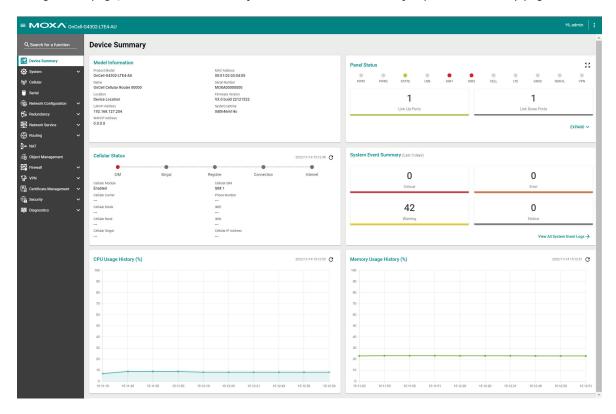
#### Log Out

Log Out	
Are you sure you want to log out?	
CANCEL	LOG OUT

Click **LOG OUT** to log out of the Industrial Secure Router.

## **Device Summary**

When logging in to the Industrial Secure Router, you will be presented with the **Device Summary** page. This overview page contains basic activity and performance information of the device. If you are on another configuration page, click **Device Summary** from the Function Menu to jump to the summary page.



See the following sections for a more detailed description of each widget on the summary page.

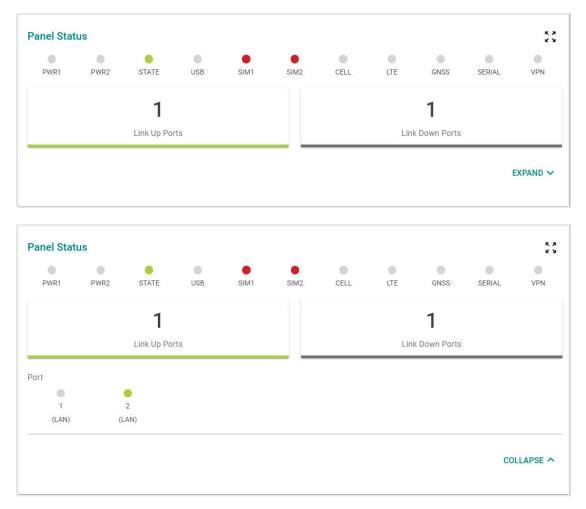
## **Model Information**

This panel shows basic information for the Industrial Secure Router, including product model name, serial number, firmware version, system uptime, etc.

Product Model	MAC Address	
OnCell-G4302-LTE4-AU	00:01:02:03:04:05	
Name	Serial Number	
OnCell Cellular Router 00000	MOXA0000000	
Location	Firmware Version	
Device Location	V3.0 build 22121522	
AN IP Address	System Uptime	
192.168.127.254	0d0h46m14s	
NAN IP Address		
0.0.0.0		

## **Panel Status**

This panel illustrates the panel status. For example, the connecting ports will be shown in green, while the disconnected ports will be shown in gray. Click **EXPAND**  $\checkmark$  to view more detailed information. Click **COLLAPSE**  $\land$  to hide the details.



#### **Panel View**

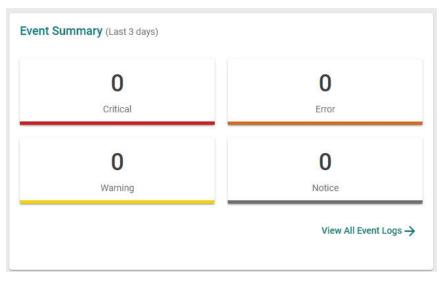
Click the  $\sum_{i=1}^{n}$  icon in the Panel Status widget to view the device port status on a representative image of the device. Click the X icon in the upper-right corner to close the panel view.

The panel view figure varies depending on the product model you are using.



## Event Summary (Last 3 Days)

This panel shows the event summary for the past three days.



Click View All Event Logs  $\rightarrow$  to go to the Event Log page, where you can view all event logs in more detail.

Ev	ent Lo	bg							
	System L	.og	Firewall	Log	VPN Log	Threshold Settings	Backup		
	C 1	•							
	Index	Timesta	mp	Severity	Additional message				
	1	1970/1/3	3 11:34:4+8:00	Info	Auth Ok, Login Succes	s Account=admin ,Bootup=	52, Startup=0d0h48m16s		
	2	1970/1/3 11:33:58		Emergency	Auth Fail Account=admin ,Bootup=52, Startup=0d0h48m10s				
	3	1970/1/3 11:26:59	-	Info	Auth Ok, Login Succes	s Account=admin ,Bootup=	52, Startup=0d0h41m11s		
	4	1970/1/3	3 10:46:8+8:00	Emergency	Power Transition (Off	-> On) Power 2 ,Bootup=52,	Startup=0d0h0m19s		
	5	1970/1/	3 10:46:7+8:00	Emergency	Warm Start Factory De	efault ,Bootup=52, Startup=0	0d0h0m18s		
	6	1970/1/3 10:45:57	-	Emergency	Link On Port 1 ,Bootup	=52, Startup=0d0h0m8s			
	7	1970/1/3 10:44:46	-	Info	Auth Ok, Login Succes	s Account=admin ,Bootup=	51, Startup=0d4h38m55s		
	8	1970/1/3 10:30:48		Info	Auth Ok, Login Succes	s Account=admin ,Bootup=	51, Startup=0d4h24m58s		

For Event Log settings, refer to the Event Log section.

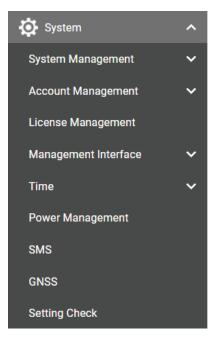
## CPU Usage History (%)

This panel shows the device's CPU usage. The data will be shown as a percentage over time. Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the graph.



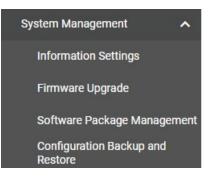
The **System** section includes the most common settings required by administrators to maintain and control the Moxa Industrial Secure Router.

From the **System** menu, you can access the **System Management, Account Management, License Management, Management Interface, Time, Power Management, SMS**, GNSS, and Setting Check configuration pages.



## System Management

From the **System Management** menu, the following functions can be configured: **Information Settings**, **Firmware Upgrade**, **Software Package Management**, and **Configure Backup and Restore**.



## **Information Settings**

The **Information Settings** screen lets you edit the basic device information to make it easier to identify the device on the network.

Device Name OnCell Cellular Router		0
Uncen cenular Rouler		•
	22 / 30	
Host Name		The host name is introduced for
OnCell-Cellular-Router		protocol usage, e.g., DHCP Option 12, where the syntax should follow the hos
		name principles.
Location		
Device Location		
Device Education		
	15/80	
Description		
	0 / 40	
Contact Information		
	0 / 40	
APPLY		

#### **Device Name**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	between the roles or applications of different units on the	OnCell Cellular Router

#### Host Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 80 characters	Enter the host name for the device for protocol use (e.g.	OnCell-Cellular-
Max. 80 characters	DHCP Option 12).	Router

#### Location

Description	Factory Default
Enter a location for the device. This is useful for quickly identifying the location of different units. For example, "Production line 1".	Device Location
	Enter a location for the device. This is useful for quickly identifying the location of different units. For example,

## Description

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 40 characters	Enter a description for the device.	None

#### **Contact Information**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 40 characters	Enter the contact information for the person in charge of the device. This is useful for providing information on who is responsible for maintaining this unit and how to contact this person.	None

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Firmware Upgrade**

There are five ways to update your Moxa router's firmware: from a local \*.rom file, by remote TFTP server, USB tool, SCP server, and SFTP server.



#### NOTE

If it is necessary to verify the integrity and signature of the application when the system is running, the administrator can use the **show integrity check** CLI command.

#### Local

Select Local from the drop-down list under Method.

D

#### Select File

Before performing the firmware upgrade, download the firmware (\*.rom) file from the Moxa website (<u>www.moxa.com</u>).

Click Click

#### **TFTP Server**

Select **TFTP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

lethod		
FTP	*	
erver IP Address *	File Name *	

#### Server IP Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Enter the IP address of the TFTP server where the target firmware file (*.rom) is located.	None
File Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Firmware file name	Enter the file name of the target firmware file.	None

When finished, click **UPGRADE** to start the firmware upgrade process.

#### USB

On large-scale networks, administrators need to configure many network devices. This is a time-consuming process and errors often occur. By using Moxa's Automatic Backup Configurator (ABC-02), the administrator can easily duplicate the system configurations across many systems in a short period of time.

Administrators only need to set up the configuration in a system once including the firewall rules and certificates and export the configuration file to the ABC-02. Then, the administrator can plug the ABC-02-USB into other systems to sync the configuration of these devices with the configuration files stored in the ABC-02-USB. For more details about the ABC-02-USB, please visit: https://www.moxa.com/product/Automatic Backup Configurator ABC-02-USB.htm

#### Moxa's Automatic Backup Configurator (ABC-02-USB)



To use the Moxa USB-based ABC-02 configuration tool to upgrade the firmware, connect the ABC-02-USB to the router and select **USB** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

#### Firmware Upgrade

Method USB	•	
Select File *		
UPGRADE		

#### Select File

Before performing the firmware upgrade, download the firmware (\*.rom) file from the Moxa website (<u>www.moxa.com</u>).

Click C to select the firmware file stored on the ABC-02-USB. With the firmware selected, click **UPGRADE** to start the upgrade process. This procedure will take several minutes to complete.



#### NOTE

The ABC-02 USB is an optional accessory and must be purchased separately.



#### NOTE

If you have difficulties using the ABC-02 configuration tool, check if the USB Function has been enabled in the <u>Hardware Interface</u> section.

#### SCP

Select SCP from the drop-down list under Method.

#### **Firmware Upgrade**

Method * SCP -			
Account *	Password *	Ø	
0/31		0/31	
Server IP Address *	File Name *		
0 / 31			0 / 6

#### Account

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the username for SCP authentication.	None

#### Password

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the password for SCP authentication.	None
Server IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Enter the IP address of the SCP server where the target firmware file (*.rom) is located.	None

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Firmware file name	Enter the file name of the target firmware file.	None

When finished, click **UPGRADE** to start the firmware upgrade process.

#### SFTP

Select **SFTP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

#### **Firmware Upgrade**

SFTP -	-	
Account *	Password* O	
Server IP Address *	File Name *	0 / 63

#### Account

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the username for SFTP authentication.	None

Password

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	•	-
Max. 31 characters	Enter the password for SFTP authentication.	None
Server IP Address		
	Description	Factory Default
Setting		
	<b>Description</b> Enter the IP address of the SFTP server where the target firmware file (*.rom) is located.	Factory Default

File Name				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Firmware file name	Enter the file name of the target firmware file.	None		

When finished, click **UPGRADE** to start the firmware upgrade process.

## Software Package Management

The Industrial Secure Router supports two package types: a **Network Security Package** and a **MXsecurity Agent Package**. You can install or upgrade these packages to expand the security features of the Industrial Secure Router with advanced functions.

#### NOTE

The MXsecurity Agent Package function is only available for the OnCell G4300-LTE4 Series.

## Software Package Management

Network Security Pa	ackage
Status Enabled	
Source *	v
UPGRADE	
MXsecurity Agent P	Package
Status	dekuge
Enabled	
Source *	*
UPGRADE	

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled	The package is installed and is working normally.	
Disabled	The package is installed but was abnormally terminated.	Enabled
Uninstalled	No package is installed.	

#### Source

Select the source for installing or upgrading the security package. There are two ways to install or upgrade security packages: using a local file or through a firmware file. Refer to the following sections.

#### Local

Before performing the package upgrade, download the package (\*.pkg) file from the Moxa website (<u>www.moxa.com</u>).

Network Sec	urity Package	
Status Enabled		
Source *		
Local	<ul> <li>Select File *</li> </ul>	
UPGRADE		
	gent Package	
MXsecurity A	gent Package	
	gent Package	

#### Source

Select Local from the drop-down menu under Source to update an existing package using a local file.

#### Select File

Click Click

#### Firmware

This requires the firmware containing the package file is already installed on the device. Refer to the <u>Firmware Upgrade</u> section on how to install firmware.

Network Secur	ity Package
Status Enabled	
Source *	Package Version
Firmware	▼ 5.0.16
UPGRADE	
UPGRADE MXsecurity Ag	
MXsecurity Ag	

#### Source

Select **Firmware** from the drop-down menu under **Source** to install or update a package through firmware.

#### Package Version

This shows the target firmware version. Click **UPGRADE** to start the upgrade process. This procedure will take several minutes to complete.

## **Configuration Backup and Restore**

#### Backup



#### NOTE

For security reasons, we strongly recommend the administrator to back up the system configuration to a secure storage location periodically.

From the **Backup** screen, you can export the device's configuration.

Backup	Restore	File Encryption
	-	
al	-	

There are five ways to back up the configuration of your Industrial Secure Router: to the local host computer, to a remote TFTP server, to a Moxa ABC-02 USB tool, to a SCP server, or to a SFTP server.

#### Local

Select **Local** from the drop-down list under **Method**, then click **BACK UP** to back up the system configuration file to the local host machine.

#### TFTP

Select **TFTP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

## **Configuration Backup and Restore**

Backup		Restore	File Encryption	
Method TFTP	•			
Server IP Address *		File Name *		
BACK UP				

#### Server IP Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Enter the IP address of the TFTP server.	None
File Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Backup file name	Enter the file name of the configuration backup file.	None

When finished, click **BACK UP** to back up the system configuration file.

USB

Select USB from the drop-down list under Method.

Configuration Backup and Restore				
Backup	Restore	File Encryption		
Method USB BACK UP	<u>·</u>			

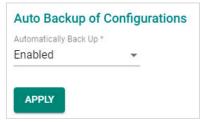
Insert the Moxa ABC-02 USB-based configuration tool into the USB port of the Industrial Secure Router and click **BACK UP** to back up the system configuration file to the tool.

#### NOTE

If you have difficulties using the ABC-02 configuration tool, check if the **USB Function** has been enabled in the <u>Hardware Interface</u> section.

#### Auto Backup of Configurations

To enable automatic configuration backups, select **Enabled** from the drop-down list. Click **APPLY** to have the device automatically back up the system configuration.



#### SCP

Select **SCP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

## **Configuration Backup and Restore**

•		
Password *	Q	
File Name *	0/31	
	31	31 0 / 31 File Name *

#### Account

o:		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the username for SCP authentication.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the password for SCP authentication.	None
Server IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Enter the IP address of the SCP server.	None
File Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Backup file name	Enter the file name of the configuration backup file.	None

When finished, click **BACK UP** to back up the system configuration file.

#### SFTP

Select **SFTP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

## **Configuration Backup and Restore**

Backup	Restore	File Encryption	
Method *			
SCP	•		
A			
Account *	Password *	0/31	
Server IP Address *	File Name *		
0.4	31		0 / 63

Account		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the username for SFTP authentication.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the password for SFTP authentication.	None
Server IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Enter the IP address of the SFTP server.	None
IP address File Name	Enter the IP address of the SFTP server.	None
	Enter the IP address of the SFTP server.  Description	None Factory Default

When finished, click **BACK UP** to back up the system configuration file.

#### Restore

From the **Restore** screen, you can restore the device's configuration using a previously back up configuration file.



#### NOTE

- 1. When importing a configuration file into the device, the system will check the integrity of the file. If the integrity check fails, the system will record an event log.
- 2. If it is necessary to verify the integrity of the configuration file when the system is running, the administrator can use the **show integrity check** CLI command.

## **Configuration Backup and Restore**

Backup	Restore	File Encryption	
Method *			
Local	•		
Select File *		-	

There are five ways to restore the configurations of your Industrial Secure Router: from a local configuration file, by remote TFTP server, using a Moxa ABC-02 USB tool, by remote SCP server, or by remote SFTP server.

#### Local

Select Local from the drop-down list under Method

#### Select File

Click C to select a configuration file stored locally on the host computer. With the configuration file selected, click **RESTORE** to restore the system configuration. This procedure will take several minutes to complete.

#### TFTP

Select **TFTP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

Configuration	n Backup and	Restore	
Backup	Restore	File Encryption	
Method * TFTP	•		
Server IP Address *	File Name *		
RESTORE			

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Enter the IP address of the TFTP server.	None

File Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Configuration file name	Enter the file name of the configuration restore file.	None

When finished, click **RESTORE** to restore the system configuration.

#### USB

Select **USB** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

## **Configuration Backup and Restore**

Backup	Restore	File Encryption
Method USB	•	
Select File *		
RESTORE		

Insert the Moxa ABC-02 USB-based configuration tool into the USB port of the Industrial Secure Router and click **RESTORE** to restore the system configuration.



#### NOTE

If you have difficulties using the ABC-02 configuration tool, check if the **USB Function** has been enabled in the <u>Hardware Interface</u> section.

#### **Auto Backup of Configurations**

To enable automatic configuration restoration, select **Enabled** from the drop-down list and click **APPLY** to have the device automatically restore the system configuration.

Auto Backup of C	onfigurations
Automatically Restore *	
Enabled	-
APPLY	

#### SCP

Select **SCP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

Backup	Restore	File Encryption	
Method *			
SCP	-		
Account *	Password *	Ø	
0 / 3	1	0/31	
Server IP Address *	File Name *		

#### Account

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the username for SCP authentication.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the password for SCP authentication.	None
Server IP Address		
	Description	Eactory Default
Setting IP address	<b>Description</b> Enter the IP address of the SCP server.	Factory Default None
Setting	•	Factory Default None Factory Default

When finished, click **RESTORE** to restore the system configuration.

#### SFTP

Select **SFTP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

Backup		Restore	File Encryption	
Method *				
SFTP	•			
Account *		Password *	ø	
(	0 / 31		0 / 31	

#### Account

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the username for SFTP authentication.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter the password for SFTP authentication.	None
Server IP Address Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Description Enter the IP address of the SFTP server.	Factory Default
Setting		
Setting IP address		

When finished, click **RESTORE** to restore the system configuration.

### **File Encryption**

You can export the configuration as an encrypted text-based (command line type) configuration file and specify an encryption key string. The key string is also used for decrypting when importing an encrypted configuration file.

### **Configuration Backup and Restore**

Backup	Restore	File Encryption
onfiguration File Signature	e *	
Disabled		-
ignature Information *		
ncrypt sensitive inf	ormation only	*
ey String *		
		4/31
APPLY		

#### **Configuration File Signature**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enables or disables the use of a digital signature for checking the configuration file integrity.	None
		Eactory Default
Signature Information Setting	Description	Factory Default
		Factory Default Encrypt sensitive information only

#### Key String

Key burnig		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IMAY 31 Characters	Enter an encryption key string. This key string is also used to decrypt encrypted configuration files.	moxa

When finished, click **Apply** to apply the changes.

### **Account Management**

Click **Account Management**, two functions can be configured under this section: **User Accounts**, and **Password Policy**.

Account Management	^
User Accounts	
Password Policy	

### **User Accounts**

The Moxa Industrial Secure Router's account management function allows you to create, manage, modify, and remove user accounts. There are three levels of configuration access: Admin, Supervisor, and User. The admin accounts have read/write access to all configuration parameters. Supervisors have full editing rights but cannot create, modify, or delete accounts. User-level accounts have read-only access and can only view configurations.

## 

### NOTE

- 1. We strongly recommend changing the default password after logging in for the first time.
- 2. The default 'admin' account cannot be deleted and is enabled by default.
- 3. For security reasons, it is recommended for the administrator to keep a record of the account list and associated users.

Us	er Acc	ounts				
	Ð				Q Search	
		Status	Username	Authority		
		Enabled	admin	Admin		
	□ ⁄	Enabled	configadmin	Supervisor		
	• /	Enabled	user	User		
	Max. 10					1 – 3 of 3

#### **Create a New Account**

Click the **I** icon to create a new user account. Enter a username and password, assign the status and the authority to the new account, and click **CREATE**. Once created, the new account will appear in the Account List table.

Create New Ac	count			
Status *	•			
Username *				
At least 4 characters	0/31			
Authority *	•			
New Password *		Confirm Password	*	
At least 4 characters	0/16	At least 4 characters	0/16	
			CANCEL	CREATE

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled	The Industrial Secure Router can be accessed by this account.	
Disabled	The Industrial Secure Router cannot be accessed by this	None
	account.	

#### Username

Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 31 characters	Enter a username for the account.	None

#### Authority

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Admin	The account has read/write access to all configuration	
Aumm	parameters.	
Currenticen	The account has read/write access to all configuration	None
Supervisor	parameters except create, delete, and modify accounts.	None
User	The account can only view configurations and cannot make	-
USEI	any modifications.	

#### NOTE

Refer to <u>User Role Privileges</u> for a detailed description of read/write access privileges for the admin, supervisor, and user authority levels.

New Password         Factory Default           Setting         Description				
4 to 16 characters	Enter a password for the account.	None		
Confirm Password				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		

#### **Modify an Existing Account**

In the Account List table, click the  $\checkmark$  icon next to the account you want to modify the account.

Edit Account S	ettings	5	
Status * Enabled	-		
Username USET			
At least 4 characters Authority *	4/31		
User	*		
Old Password *			
At least 4 characters	0/16		
New Password *		Confirm Password	*
		At least 4 characters	0.0211128.5

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled	The Industrial Secure Router can be accessed by this account.	
Disabled	The Industrial Secure Router cannot be accessed by this account.	None

#### Username

Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 31 characters	Enter a username for the account.	None

#### Authority

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Admin	The account has read/write access to all configuration	
Aumin	parameters.	
Supervisor	The account has read/write access to all configuration	None
Supervisor	parameters except create, delete, and modify accounts.	None
User	The account can only view configurations but cannot make	
USEI	any modifications.	

#### Old Password

Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 16 characters	If you want to change the account password, enter the current password of the account.	None

# New Password Factory Default Setting Description 4 to 16 characters Enter a new password for the account.

Confirm Password				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
4 to 16 characters	Re-enter the new password for the account to confirm.	None		

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing Account**

To delete existing accounts, select one or multiple accounts from the Account List table and click the  $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$  icon.

#### **User Accounts**

				Q Search
	Status	Username	Authority	
• /	Enabled	admin	Admin	
• •	Enabled	configadmin	Supervisor	
<b>Z</b> /	Enabled	user	User	

Click **DELETE** to delete the account

Delete Account	
Are you sure you want to delete the select account?	cted
CANCEL	DELETE

#### Search for an Existing Account

Enter the full or partial account username in the Search field. Any user accounts matching the search criteria will be shown in the Account List table.

U	ser Acc	ounts				
	٥				Q ad	
		Status	Username	Authority		
		Enabled	admin	Admin		
		Enabled	configadmin	Supervisor		
	Max. 10					1 – 2 of 2

### **Password Policy**

Using the Password Policy function, administrators can force more complex login passwords to improve the overall security of the system. At the same time, administrators can configure an account login failure lockout time to avoid unauthorized users from gaining access.

### **Password Policy**

4 - 16	
Password complexity strength check	
Disabled	
Must contain at least one digit (0-9)	
Disabled	•
Must include both upper and lower case letters (A-	Z, a-z)
Disabled	
Must contain at least one special character (~!@#\$	\$%^&* :;,.<>{}[]())
Disabled	
Password Max-life-time *	
0	
0 - 365	

#### Minimum Length

Minimum Length		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 16 characters	Enter the minimum required password length.	4
Password complexity	/ strength check	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the password complexity strength check.	Disabled
Must contain at least	one digit (0-9)	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the requirement of the password to contain at least one digit.	Disabled
Must include both un	per and lower case letters (A-Z, a-z)	
nase menade both up		
-	Description	Factory Default
Setting		Factory Default Disabled
Setting Enabled or Disabled	Description Enable or disable the requirement of the password to include	
Setting Enabled or Disabled Must contain at least	Description Enable or disable the requirement of the password to include both upper- and lower-case letters.	
Setting Enabled or Disabled Must contain at least	Description         Enable or disable the requirement of the password to include both upper- and lower-case letters.         to one special character (~!@#\$%^&*-  :;,.<>{}[]())	Disabled
Setting Enabled or Disabled Must contain at least Setting Enabled or Disabled	Description         Enable or disable the requirement of the password to include both upper- and lower-case letters.         cone special character (~!@#\$%^&*-  :;,.<>{}[]())         Description         Enable or disable the requirement of the password to contain at least one special character.	Disabled
Setting Enabled or Disabled Must contain at least Setting	Description         Enable or disable the requirement of the password to include both upper- and lower-case letters.         cone special character (~!@#\$%^&*-  :;,.<>{}[]())         Description         Enable or disable the requirement of the password to contain at least one special character.	Disabled

#### NOTE

For security reasons, the administrator should set the minimum password length to 16 and enable all the password complexity check options.

### NOTE

For security reasons, the administrator should set a maximum password lifetime to make sure users are required to update their password frequently.

### **License Management**

. . .

The Industrial Secure Router supports additional software licenses to enable specific functions and services. To add a new license, you will need to activate the product license using a registration code.

Click the <u>Get New License Here</u> ink to go to the Moxa license management portal. Refer to the **Moxa Software License Portal User Manual** for more information on how to activate product licenses.

License M	anagement					
Overview	Name IPS-DEVICE Valid Durations (days) 11477	Start Date 2022-04-01 12:20:00 End Date 2053-12-08 02:07:00	Status Valid <u>Get New License Here</u>			
ADD NEW LICEN						
C				Q Search		
Update Date	Activation Code				License Duration (days)	License Type
1970-05-15 08:03:51					11574	New
						1 – 1 of 1

#### Overview

The Overview section displays the license name, the valid duration (in days), the start date, the end date, and the status of the current license.

#### **License History**

The license history section shows more detailed license information.

- Updated Date: The date when the license was updated by entering the activation code.
- License Duration: The duration the license is valid for (in days).
- License Type: The type of license.

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the license information.

Enter the full or partial license number in the Search field. Any licenses matching the search criteria will be shown in the License List table.

#### Add a New License

Whenever a new Industrial Secure Router license is activated in the license management portal, the system will generate an activation code that can be used to activate the license on the Industrial Secure Router.

- 1. Go to **System > License Management**.
- 2. Click the ADD NEW LICENSE button in the Overview section.

The **Add New License** screen appears.

Add New License		
1	2	3
Login Moxa License Site	Copy Serial Number	Activate
<ol> <li>Login <u>Moxa License Site</u></li> <li>Choose "Activate a Product site.</li> <li>Key in the Registration Cod Number would be get at the n</li> </ol>	License" and product type "	, ,
		CLOSE NEXT

#### 3. Click Next.

4. Click the D icon to copy the serial number and store it somewhere where it can be easily copied from. Use the serial number to activate the license in the Moxa license management portal.

Add New License			
Login Moxa License Site	Copy Serial Number		3 Activate
Copy the Serial Number to			Activate
Serial Number:	0		_
		CL	OSE NEXT

5. Click Next.

6. Enter the activation code from the email you have received after activating the license in the license management portal.

dd New License		
0	• • • • •	3
Login Moxa License Site	Copy Serial Number	Activate
Download the license from M	oxa License Site , and paste the	he Activation Code here.
Activation Code		
		CLOSE APPLY

7. Click **APPLY**.

The license is now activated on the Industrial Secure Router.

### **Management Interface**

From the **Management Interface** section, four functions can be configured: **User Interface, Hardware Interface,** and **SNMP**.

Management Interface	^
User Interface	
Hardware Interface	
SNMP	

### **User Interface**

From the User Interface screen, users can configure which interfaces can be used to access the device.



#### NOTE

For security reasons, users should access the device using the secure HTTPS and SSH interfaces.

HTTP		TCP Port (HTTP) *
Enabled	-	80
		2 - 65535
HTTPS		TCP Port (HTTPS) *
Enabled	•	443
		2 - 65535
Telnet		TCP Port (Telnet) *
Enabled	-	23
		2 - 65535
SSH		TCP Port (SSH) *
Enabled	-	22
		2 - 65535
Ping Response (WAN)		
Disabled	*	
Moxa Service		
Enabled	-	
TCP Port for Moxa Ser	vice (Encrypt	ted)
443	(	
UDP Port for Moxa Ser	vice (Encryp	ted)
40404	1100 (21101))	(
Maximum Number of I	onin Sessio	ns for HTTP+HTTPS *
5	"oðin 9692101	
1 - 10		
	onin Secolo	ne for Tainat+SCU *
Maximum Number of I	Login Sessiol	IS IOF TEINETTSSM ~
5		

#### HTTP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable HTTP connections.	Enabled
TCP Port (HTTP)		
TCP Port (HTTP) Setting	Description	Factory Default

#### HTTPS

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable HTTPS connections.	Enabled

The administrator can manually import a self-signed certificate (in .p12 format) for web server (HTTPS) services. However, the administrator should check the root certificate and validity of the signature before importing, according to the organization's security procedures and requirements. After importing a certificate, the administrator should check if the certificate has been revoked and if so, the certificate must be replaced. When the browser verifies the signature and accesses the device, it will return the subject name which the administrator can use to confirm the connected device is authorized.

### NOTE

- 1. The encryption algorithm of keys should be selected based on internationally recognized and proven security practices and recommendations.
- 2. The lifetime of certificates generated for web server (HTTPS) services should be short and in accordance with the organization's security procedures and requirements.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
2 to 65535	Enter the TCP port number for HTTPS.	443
Telnet		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Telnet connections.	Disabled
TCP Port (Telnet)		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
2 to 65535	Enter the TCP port number for Telnet.	23
SSH		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable SSH connections.	Enabled
TCP Port (SSH)		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
2 to 65535	Enter the TCP port number for SSH.	22

Ping Response (WAN)			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Enabled or Disabled	If a WAN connection has been established, enable this feature to have the WAN port respond to ping requests.	Disabled	

### NC

NOTE

To ping the WAN port, make sure the "Ping Response (WAN)" function is enabled, and the ping sender IP is in the Trusted Access list or the "Accept All LAN Port Connections" option is enabled in Trusted Access.

MOXA Service		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the MOXA Service.	Enabled

### NOTE

- 1. Moxa Service is only used for Moxa network management software.
- 2. Moxa Service is only available for user accounts with admin privileges.

TCP Port for Moxa Service (Encrypted)			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
443 (read only)	The TCP port number for Moxa Service.	443	

UDP Por	t for Moxa	Service	(Encrypted)
---------	------------	---------	-------------

Setting	Description	Factory Default
40404 (read only)	The UDP port number for Moxa Service.	40404
Maximum Number	of Login Sessions for HTTP+HTTTPS	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the maximum combined number of users that can be	
1 to 10	logged in to the Industrial Secure Router using HTTP and	5
	HTTPS. The maximum is 10.	
Maximum Number	of Login Sessions for Telnet+SSH	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the maximum combined number of users that can be	
1 to 5	logged in to the Industrial Secure Router using Telnet and	5

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

SSH. The maximum is 5.

### **Hardware Interface**

The **Hardware Interface** allows you to enable or disable the USB interface, which is used by the Moxa ABC-02 configuration tool.

Hardware Interface				
USB Function Enabled				
APPLY				

#### **USB** Function

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the USB function on the Industrial Secure Router.	Enabled

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### SNMP

The Industrial Secure Router supports SNMP V1/V2c/V3. SNMP V1 and SNMP V2c use a community string match for authentication, which means that SNMP servers access all objects with read-only permissions using the community string public (default value). SNMP V3, which requires the user to select MD5 or SHA authentication, is the most secure protocol. You can also enable data encryption to enhance data security.

SNMP security modes and security levels supported by the Industrial Secure Router are listed in the following table.

Protocol Version	UI Setting	Authentication Type	Data Encryption	Method
	V1, V2c Read Community	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication
SNMP V1, V2c	V1, V2c Write/Read Community	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication.

Protocol Version	UI Setting	Authentication Type	Data Encryption	Method
	None	No	No	Uses an account with admin or user to access objects.
SNMP V3	MD5 or SHA	Authentication based on MD5 or SHA	Disabled	Provides authentication based on HMAC-MD5, or HMAC-SHA algorithms. 8-character passwords are the minimum requirement for authentication.
SNMP V3	MD5 or SHA	Authentication based on MD5 or SHA	Data encryption key: DES, AES	Provides authentication based onHMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithms, and data encryption key. 8-character passwords and a data encryption key are the minimum requirements for authentication and encryption.

### **General Settings**

The SNMP page is used to enable or disable SNMP. Depending on the selected SNMP version, additional configuration parameters will become available.

General	SNMP Account
MP Version *	-
sabled	- 0

#### SNMP Version

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Disabled,		
V1, V2c, V3, or	Select the SNMP protocol version used to manage the secure	Disabled
V1, V2c, or	router.	Disabled
V3 only		

If you selected an SNMP version, configure the following settings:

General	S	NMP Account	
SNMP Version *			
V1, V2c, V3	*	0	
Community Name 1 *		Access Control 1	
public		Read Only	-
	6/30		
Community Name 2 *		Access Control 2 *	
private		Read Write	Ŧ
	7/30		

#### *Community Name 1/2*

Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Max. 30 characters	Use a community string match for authentication	public/private			
Access Control 1/2					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Read Write, or Read only, or No Access	Select the access control type for when the community string is matched	Read Only/Read Write			

### **SNMP** Account

The Industrial Secure Router comes with two preconfigured SNMP Accounts which are disabled by default.

SNMP				
General	SNMP Account			
			Q Search	
Status	Authority	Authentication Type	Encryption Method	
🖍 Disabled	Admin	MD5	DES	
🌶 Disabled	User	MD5	DES	
			1 – 2 of 2	2

### Modify an Existing SNMP Account

In the SNMP Account list, click the  $\checkmark$  icon next to the SNMP account you want to modify.

Edit SNMP A	dmin Accou	nt Settings		
Status				
Disabled				
			CANCEL	APPLY

Select **Enabled** from the Status drop-down menu and configure the following settings:

Edit SNMP Adm	nin Ac	count Settings		
Status				
Enabled	•			
Authentication Type *				
MD5	•			
Encryption Method *				
DES	-	Encryption Key *	Ø	
		At least 8 characters	0/29	
			CANCEL	APPLY

#### Authentication Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
MD5	Provides authentication based on the HMAC-MD5 algorithms. 8-character passwords are the minimum requirement for authentication.	
SHA	Provides authentication based on the HMAC-SHA algorithms. 8-character passwords are the minimum requirement for authentication.	MD5
None	Do not use any authentication.	]

#### **Encryption Method**

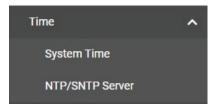
Setting	Description	Factory Default
DES/AES	Select an encryption method.	DES

Encryption Key		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 29 Characters	Specify the encryption key. The key must be at least 8 characters long.	None

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Time

From the **Time** section, the following functions can be configured: **System Time**, and **NTP/SNTP Server**.



### **System Time**

The Moxa Industrial Secure Router's system time can be synced with an NTP/SNTP server or can be userspecified. The system time is also used for time stamps in functions such as automatic warning emails.



### NOTE

The Moxa Industrial Secure Router does not feature a real-time clock. If there is no NTP/SNTP server on the network or the device is not connected to the Internet, the Current Time and Current Date must be manually reconfigured after each reboot.

#### Time

ystem Time	е		
Time	Time Zone		
Current Time 2022-07-08 18:06:5	0 UTC+08:00		
Clock Source Local	•		
Date * 2022-07-08			
Time 06:06 PM	0		

#### Current Time

This shows the current date, time, and time zone.

### NOTE

Click **SYNC FROM BROWSER** to synchronize the router's clock with the browser time. Click the C icon in the upper right corner to refresh all the information on the page.

Setting	Description Factory Defau		
Setting		Factory Default	
Local	Set the clock source to local time. This will require you to		
	manually specify the time and date.	Local	
SNTP	Set the clock source to SNTP.		
NTP	Set the clock source to NTP.		

#### Local

Date

2410		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Date	Manually set the date in YYYY-MM-DD format.	Current date

202:	2 JUL -	Ŧ			<	>
Su	Mo	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa
JUL					1	2
3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24	25	26	27	28	29	30
31						

#### Time

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Time	Manually set the time in HH:MM AM/PM format.	Current time

#### **NTP/SNTP Server**

If SNTP or NTP is selected as the clock source, configure the following settings:

Time		Time Zone	
Current Time 2022-07-08 17:45:	:42 UTC+	-08:00	
Clock Source SNTP	•		
Time Server 1			
	0/60		
	0/00		
Time Server 2	0/00		

#### Time Server 1

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 60 characters	Specify the IP or domain address of the primary time server	None
	(e.g., 192.168.1.1, time.stdtime.gov.tw, or time.nist.gov).	None

Time Server 2

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 60 characters	Specify the IP or domain address of the secondary time server. The Moxa Industrial Secure Router will use the secondary NTP server if it cannot connect to the primary NTP server.	None

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### **Time Zone**

Time	Time Zone	
me Zone JTC+08:00)Taipei		•
aylight Saving		
aylight Saving Status Disabled	-	

#### Time Zone

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Select from the drop-	Select the time zone, which is used to determine the local	UTC (Coordinated
down list	time offset from UTC (Coordinated Universal Time).	Universal Time)

#### **Daylight Saving**

The Daylight Saving settings are used to automatically set the Moxa router's time forward according to national standards.

#### Daylight Saving Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Daylight Saving time.	Disabled

If Daylight Saving time is enabled, configure the following settings:

Time		Time Zon	e						
Time Zone (UTC+08:00)Taipei					•				
Daylight Saving Daylight Saving Status Enabled	•								
Offset O	•								
Start	hour								
Start						Hour		Minutes	
Month	•	Week	•	Day	•	00	•	00	•
End									
Month		Week	_	Day	*	Hour 00	*	Minutes 00	-

#### Offset

Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified hour	Specify the offset time (in hours) for Daylight Saving time.	0

#### Start

Month		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified month	Specify the month the Daylight Saving time begins.	None
Week		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified week	Specify the week the Daylight Saving time begins.	None
Day		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified day	Specify the day the Daylight Saving time begins.	None
Hour		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified hour	Specify the hour the Daylight Saving time begins.	00
Minutes		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified minutes	Specify the minute(s) the Daylight Saving time begins.	00

#### End

Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified month	Specify the month the Daylight Saving time ends.	None
Week		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified week	Specify the week the Daylight Saving time ends.	None
Day		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified day	Specify the day the Daylight Saving time ends.	None
Hour		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified hour	Specify the hour the Daylight Saving time ends.	00
Minutes		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified minutes	Specify the minute(s) the Daylight Saving time ends.	00



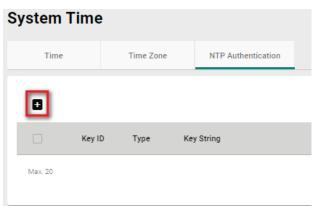
#### NOTE

Changing the time zone will automatically adjust the current time. Be sure to set the time zone before setting the time.

### **NTP Authentication**

This section describes how to configure NTP Authentication.

To create a new entry, click the NTP Authentication tab, then click the Add (+) icon.



Configure the following settings:

Create Entry			
Key ID *			
1 - 65535			
Type *	Ŧ		
Key String *	ø		
	0 / 32		
		CANCEL	CREAT

Key ID		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Enter the Key ID to use for NTP authentication.	None
Туре		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
MD5 or SHA-512	Choose the authentication type.	None
Key String		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 32 characters	Enter the password to use for the authentication key.	None

When finished, click **CREATE**.

### **NTP/SNTP Server**

NTP/SNTP Server *	
Disabled	*
Client Authentication *	
Disabled	-

#### NTP/SNTP Server

,		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable NTP/SNTP server functionality for clients.	Disabled
<b>Client Authentication</b>		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable NTP authentication for clients.	Disabled

### **Power Management**

NOTE

This function is only available for the OnCell G4300-LTE4 Series.

### General

The General tab lets you enable power management functionality. If enabled, you can control how and when the device enters a power-saving state. If disabled, the device will never enter power-saving mode.

Power Management			
General	Scheduling		
Power Management * Disabled	•		

#### **Power Management**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Disabled	Disable power management.	
Cohoduling	Control the device's power saving state based on a user-	Disabled
Scheduling	configured schedule. Refer to the <u>Scheduling</u> section.	

### Scheduling

From the Scheduling screen, you can create cyclical power management rules to control when the device goes into and leaves power saving mode. Cycle rules will repeat based on the configured schedule.

Wakeup C	ycle Rule					
Cycle *						
Hourly	-	-				
Ð						Q Search
	Status	Wakeup Start Time	Wakeup End Time	Rule Start	Rule End	
Max. 2						

#### Cycle

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	The device will enter and leave power saving mode at the	
Hourly	specified time every hour. Refer to Create an Hourly Cycle	
	Rule for more information.	
	The device will enter and leave power saving mode at the	
Daily	specified time each day. Refer to Create a Daily Cycle Rule for	
	more information.	Dailv
	The device will enter and leave power saving mode on the	Dally
Weekly	specified day and time of every week. Refer to Create a	
	Weekly Cycle Rule for more information.	
	The device will enter and leave power saving mode on the	
Monthly	specified day and time of every month. Refer to Create a	
	Monthly Cycle Rule for more information.	

#### NOTE

Only one type of wakeup cycle rule (e.g. daily, weekly, ...) can be active at any given time. If a rule of another cycle type is created, all existing rules will be deleted.

Clear Rule		
Are you sure you want to change Cycle Daily?	Type to	
The change would clear current rule.		
CANCEL	CLEAR	



### NOTE

To avoid the system from entering power saving mode and interrupting your configuration session, all rules should be scheduled to start at least 15 minutes later than the time the rule is created. If the rule is set to start within 15 minutes after being created, the system will ignore the first cycle of that rule and start at the next cycle.

### **Create an Hourly Cycle Rule**

Wakeup C	ycle Rule					
Cycle *						
Hourly		-				
۰						Q Search
	Status	Wakeup Start Time	Wakeup End Time	Rule Start	Rule End	
Max. 2						

With the Cycle type set to **Hourly**, from the Wakeup Cycle Ruler list, click the **Add** ( ) icon to add a new entry.

Status * Enabled	•			
Wakeup Start Time * HH <b>:00</b>	0	Wakeup End Time *	Q	
Rule Schedule				
Start Date *	Ē			

Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the cycle rule.	Enabled
Wakeup Start Time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
00 to 59	Specify the minutes when the device will leave power saving mode each hour.	00
Wakeup End Time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
00 to 59	Specify the minutes when the device will enter power saving mode each hour.	15
Start Date		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Date	Specify the date this cycle rule will take effect.	None
End Date		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Date	Specify the date this cycle rule will end.	None

### **Create a Daily Cycle Rule**

Wakeup C	cle Rule					
Cycle *						
Daily						
						<b>Q</b> Search
	Status	Wakeup Start Time	Wakeup End Time	Rule Start	Rule End	
	Enabled	04:00	16:00	2022-08-03	2022-08-03	
Max. 2						

With the Cycle type set to **Daily**, from the Wakeup Cycle Rule list, click the **Add** ( ) icon to add a new entry.

Add Cycle Ru	le			
Status * Enabled	•			
Wakeup Start Time 12:00 AM	© ()	Wakeup End Time 12:15 AM	© ©	
Rule Schedule				
Start Date *	Ē			
End Date *	Ē			
			CANCEL	APPLY

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the cycle rule.	Enabled

#### Wakeup Start Time

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the hour and minutes when the device will leave	
Time	power saving mode each day. Alternatively, click the clock	12:00 AM
	icon and select the time from the drop-down list.	

#### Wakeup End Time

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the hour and minutes when the device will enter	
Time		12:15 AM
	icon and select the time from the drop-down list.	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Date	Specify the date this cycle rule will take effect.	None

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Date	Specify the date this cycle rule will end.	None

### Create a Weekly Cycle Rule

Wakeup C		<del>.</del>					<b>Q</b> Search	
	Status	Weekly Day	Wakeup Start Time	Wakeup End Time	Rule Start	Rule End		
	Enabled	Mon, Wed, Fri	04:10	17:10	2022-08-01	2022-08-02		
Max. 2							١	Wi

the Cycle type set to **Weekly**, from the Wakeup Cycle Rule list, click the **Add** ( ) icon to add a new entry.

Status * Enabled	-	Weekly Day *	•	
Wakeup Start Time	© ©	Wakeup End Time 12:15 AM	© ©	
Rule Schedule				
Start Date *				
End Date *				

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the cycle rule.	Enabled

#### Weekly Day

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checkbox	Select the days of the week on which the device will leave	None
CHECKDUX	power saving mode.	None

#### Wakeup Start Time

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Time	Specify the hour and minutes when the device will leave power saving mode each day. Alternatively, click the clock icon and select the time from the drop-down list.	12:00 AM

#### Wakeup End Time

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Time	Specify the hour and minutes when the device will enter power saving mode each day. Alternatively, click the clock icon and select the time from the drop-down list.	12:15 AM

Start Date						
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Date	Specify the date this cycle rule will take effect.	None				
End Date						
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Date	Specify the date this cycle rule will end.	None				

### Create a Monthly Cycle Rule

Wakeup Cy Cycle * Monthly		*					
٥							<b>Q</b> Search
	Status	Monthly Day	Wakeup Start Time	Wakeup End Time	Rule Start	Rule End	
□ /	Enabled	1, 15, 30	00:59	12:59	2022-08-08	2022-08-10	li -
Max. 2							

With the Cycle type set to **Monthly**, from the Wakeup Cycle Rule list, click the **Add** ( <sup>1</sup>) icon to add a new entry.

Status *				
Enabled	•	Monthly Day		
		1 - 31, allow comma(,)	day	
Wakeup Start Time	•	Wakeup End Time	•	
12:00 AM	⊗ (\)	12:15 AM	⊗ (\)	
Rule Schedule				
Start Date *				
Start Date *				
	Ē			
Start Date * End Date *				

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the cycle rule.	Enabled

Monthly Day		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 31	Specify the days of the month on which the device will leave power saving mode. You can configure multiple days, separated by a comma (e.g. 1,2,16). If there is any month during the active period of this rule that does not have the specified day(s), the system will ignore the rule for those days.	None

Wakeup Start T	ime	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the hour and minutes when the device will leave	
00 to 59	power saving mode each day. Alternatively, click the clock	12:00 AM
	icon and select the time from the drop-down list.	
Wakeup End Tir	ne	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the hour and minutes when the device will enter	
00 to 59	power saving mode each day. Alternatively, click the clock	12:15 AM
	icon and select the time from the drop-down list.	
Start Date		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Date	Specify the date this cycle rule will take effect.	None
End Date		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Date	Specify the date this cycle rule will end.	None

### **Modify a Cycle Rule**

From the Wakeup Cycle Rule list, click the pencil (  $\checkmark$  ) icon next to the entry you want to edit.

Depending on the type of rule, refer to the following sections for a description of each field:

- Create an Hourly Cycle Rule
- Create a Daily Cycle Rule
- Create a Weekly Cycle Rule
- <u>Create a Monthly Cycle Rule</u>

#### **Delete a Cycle Rule**

To delete one or multiple cycle rule(s), select the entries from the Wakeup Cycle Rule list and click the  $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$  icon.

### **Create a One-time Rule**

One-time rules allow you to configure the power saving schedule for a specific period. These rules do not repeat and have a higher priority than cycle rules. A maximum of 12 one-time rules can be created.

One Time	Rule					
0					<b>Q</b> Search	
	Status	Туре	Rule Start	Rule End		
Max. 12						0 of 0

From the One Time Rule list, click the **Add** ( ) icon to add a new entry.

Add One Time	Rule			
Status * Enabled	•	Туре *	•	
Start Start Date *	Ē	Start Time	0	
End End Date *	Ē	End Time	Q	
			CANCEL	APPLY

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the one-time rule.	Enabled

Туре		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Power Saving	The device will enter power saving mode for the specified period.	Enabled
Wake Up	The device will leave power saving mode for the specified period. This requires an active cycle rule.	

Start Date		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Date	Specify the date this one-time rule will take effect.	None
End Date		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Date		

#### Modify a One-time Rule

From the One Time Rule list, click the pencil ( $\checkmark$ ) icon next to the entry you want to edit.

Refer to Create a One-time Rule for a description of each field.

#### **Delete a One-time Rule**

To delete one or multiple one-time rule(s), select the entries from the One Time Rule list and click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon.

### SMS

When the cellular connection is not available or if there is limited service, SMS provides an emergency recovery mechanism and a way for performing out-of-band management. The remote SMS control feature enables users to get the current cellular status of the device, re-establish the cellular connection, and restart the system by sending specific SMS messages to the device. To ensure the security of out-of-band communication, the SMS function supports password protection and trusted number authentication.

With wireless out-of-band management, engineers can control and troubleshoot remote devices, avoiding costly onsite visits by service technicians and minimizing service downtime.



#### NOTE

When sending remote control SMS messages, wait 30 seconds between each message to ensure optimal system stability.

### General

From the General tab, you can enable SMS functionality and configure trusted number authentication.

SMS				
General	Re	mote Control List	Send SMS	
SMS Remote Control *				
Enabled	-	Password	Ø	
			0 / 15	
Trusted Number Authentic	ation *			

#### SMS Remote Control

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
nabled or Disabled Enable or disable remote control SMS. If enabled, the device can be controlled remotely through specific SMS messages.		Enabled	
Password			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Specify how long (in minutes) the device will wait before		None	
Trusted Number Aut	hentication		
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable trusted number authentication. If enabled, the device will only accept SMS messages from numbers added to the Trusted Numbers List. If disabled, the device can be controlled by messages sent from any number. Refer to	Enabled	

#### Add a Trusted Number

The device supports up to 4 trusted numbers.

Trusted Number List

Ð				<b>Q</b> Search	
	Name	Country Code	Number		
Max. 4					0 of 0

Adding a Trusted Number.

Click the Add ( 🕒 ) icon in the Trusted Number List to add a new entry.

Add Trusted Number I	Entry		
Name *			
+ Country Code *	Number *		
		CANCEL	APPLY

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 15 characters	Enter a name for the number. This is for reference only and	None
	helps identify the number more easily.	None
Country Code		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Country code	Specify the country code of the number.	None
Number		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Phone number	Enter the phone number.	None

### **Modify a Trusted Number**

#### Trusted Number List

				<b>Q</b> Search
	Name	Country Code	Number	
□ /	Moxa 1	886	091111111	
□ /	Moxa 2	886	0912222222	
□ /	Moxa 3	886	0913333333	
□ /	Moxa 4	886	091444444	
Max. 4				

Click the pencil (  $\checkmark$  ) icon next to the entry you want to edit.

Name *			
Moxa 1			
	6 / 15		
Country Code *		Number *	
+ 886		0911111111	

Name					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
0 to 15 characters	Enter a name for the number. This is for reference only and helps identify the number more easily.	None			
Country Code	Country Code				
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Country code	Specify the country code of the number.	None			
Number					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Phone number	Enter the phone number.	None			

### **Delete a Trusted Number**

In the Trusted Number List, check the box of the number(s) you want to delete and click the trashcan ( $\hat{\bullet}$ ) icon.

### **Remote Control List**

From the Remote Control List, you can select which SMS commands to enable.

SMS			
Ge	neral Remote Control L	ist Send SMS	
SMS Recei Enabled APPLY	🚽 🙃 Device	e will send a reply SMS to the rafter device recieve the SMS	
۰.			Q Search
	Action	Command	
	System Restart	@password@restart	
	Cellular Report	@password@cell.report	
	Cellular Start Connecting	@password@oellular.start	
	Cellular Stop Connecting	@password@cellular.stop	
	Switch SIM	@password@switchsim	
	Start IPsec Tunnel	@password@ipsec.start	
	Stop IPsec Tunnel	@password@ipsec.stop	
	Set DO On	@password@do.on	
	Set DO Off	@password@do.off	

#### SMS Receipt

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable SMS receipts. If enabled, the device will	Enabled
	send a confirmation SMS when receiving a command SMS.	LIIdbieu

Use the toggle buttons to enable or disable the corresponding SMS command. Alternatively, check the boxes

of the commands you want to manage and use the **Quick Setting** ( ) icon to enable or disable the selected commands in bulk.

Action	Command	Description
System Restart	@password@restart	The device will reboot.
Cellular Report	@password@cell.report	The device will reply with a SMS message containing the
		current cellular status of the device.
Cellular Start	@password@cellular.start	The device will enable the cellular data connection.
Connecting		
Cellular Stop	@password@cellular.stop	The device will disable the cellular data connection.
Connecting		
Switch SIM	@password@switchsim	The device will restart the cellular module and use the
		SIM card installed in the other SIM slot.
Start IPsec Tunnel	@password@ipsec.start	The device will establish the IPsec tunnel.
Stop IPsec Tunnel	@password@ipsec.stop	The device will disconnect the IPsec tunnel.
Set DO On	@password@do.on	The device will set the status of the relay output to on.
Set DO Off	@password@do.off	The device will set the status of the relay output to off.

Refer to the table below for an overview of each command.

### Send SMS

From the Send SMS screen, you can send a personalized SMS message from the device to the specified recipient.

SMS		
General	Remote Control List	Send SMS
Send SMS		
+ Country Code *	Number *	
SMS Message *		11
Special characters such as	^,   , ~, [, ], {, } require two bytes	0 / 160

Country	Code
Country	Coue

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Country code	Specify the country code of the recipient's number.	None
Number		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Phone number		

#### Message

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 160 characters	Enter a message.	Enabled

## GNSS



### NOTE

This function is only available for the OnCell G4300-LTE4 Series.

### General

From the General screen, you can enable or disable GNSS functionality.

GNSS				
General	GNSS Client G	GNSS Server	Status	
GNSS *				
Disabled	Ŧ			
APPLY				
NSS				
etting	Description			Factory Default
	Enable or disable GNSS			
nabled or Disabled	will use satellite position	ning to show it	s real-time physical	Enabled
labled of Disabled	location on the map.		s rear anne privstear	Lilableu

### **GNSS** Client

From the GNSS Client screen, you can configure GNSS Client settings which will allow the system to send GNSS data to a user-configured server.

General		GNSS Client	GNSS Server	Status
GNSS Client *				
Disabled	•	0		
Report Protocol *				
TCP	•			
		Host Port		
Host Address		8919		
IP Address/Domain Name		1 - 65535		
Report Period 30				
10 - 86400	sec.			
Report Format *				
NMEA	•	Report ID		
			0/15	

GNSS Client		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable GNSS Client functionality. If enabled, the device will send GNSS data to the configured server at a specified interval.	Disabled
Report Protocol		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
ТСР	Send reports over TCP. This requires a receipt from the server to confirm the data was delivered.	ТСР
UDP	Send reports over UDP. This does not require a receipt from the server.	
Host Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address/domain name	Enter the IP address or host name of the server that will receive the GNSS data.	None
Host Port		1
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Enter the TCP or UDP port number of the server that will receive the GNSS data.	8919
Report Period		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
10 to 86400	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which GNSS data reports are generated.	30
Report Format		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
NMEA	Send GNSS data in the standard NMEA format.	NMEA
General	Send GNSS data in latitude-longitude format.	

Report ID		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 15 characters	Enter the ID of the GNSS data report header. The Report ID and device MAC address will be included in the NMEA or General format.	None

## **GNSS Server**

From the GNSS Server screen, you can configure the GNSS Server to allow clients to request GNSS data reports.

General		GNSS Client	GNSS Server	Status
GNSS Server *				
Disabled	*	0		
Server Port				
8919				
1 - 65535				
Report Period				
30				
10 - 86400	sec.			
Report Format *				
NMEA	-	Report ID		
			0/15	

#### **GNSS Server**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable GNSS Server functionality. If enabled, clients will be able to request GNSS data reports from this server.	Disabled

1 to 65535       Enter the UDP port number for clients to access the server.       8919         Report Period	ory Default ory Default	
Report Period       Factor         Setting       Description       Factor         10 to 86400       Specify the interval (in seconds) at which GNSS data reports 30       30		
SettingDescriptionFactor10 to 86400Specify the interval (in seconds) at which GNSS data reports30	ory Default	
10 to 86400 Specify the interval (in seconds) at which GNSS data reports 30	ory Default	
10 to 86400		
Report Format		
Setting Description Factor	ory Default	
NMEA Send GNSS data in the standard NMEA format.	NMEA	
General Send GNSS data in latitude-longitude format.		
Report ID		
Setting Description Factor	ory Default	
Enter the ID of the GNSS data report header. The Report ID and device MAC address will be included in the NMEA orNone		

General format.

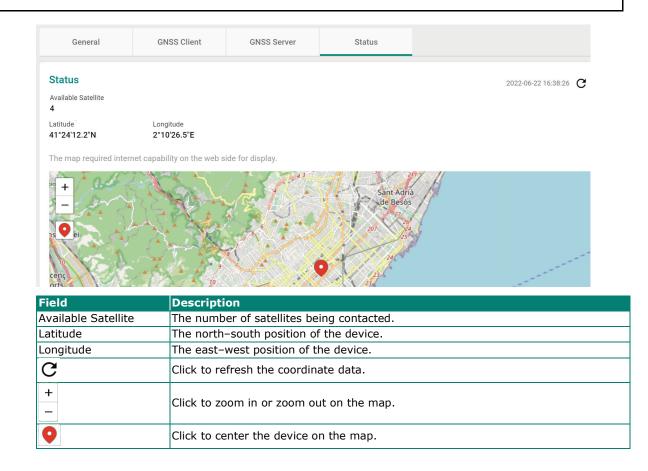
## Status

The Status screen shows the current geolocational information of the device, as well as show the device's current physical location on the interactive map.



## NOTE

The device's physical location and coordinates will only show if GNSS is enabled. Refer to the <u>General</u> section.



# **Setting Check**

**Setting Check** is a safety function which provides a double confirmation mechanism when a remote user changes the security policies, such as **Layer 3 – 7 Policy**, **Network Address Translate**, and **Trusted Access**. When a remote user changes these security policies, Setting Check allows you to block the remote user's connection to the industrial secure router. In the event of a misconfiguration, often the only way to correct a wrong setting is to get help from the local operator or go on-site and physically connect to the device through the console port, which takes up time and resources. Enabling the Setting Check function will execute these new policy changes temporarily until confirmed by the user. If not confirmed, the Industrial Secure Router will revert the changes.

# Setting Check

Setting Check Configuration		
Layer 3 - 7 Policy		
Network Address Translate		
Trusted Access		
Timer * 180		
10 - 3600 sec.		
APPLY		

#### **Setting Check Configuration**

#### Layer 3 – 7 Policy

Enable or disable the Setting Check function for Layer 3 - 7 policies changes.

#### Network Address Translate

Enable or disable the Setting Check function for NAT policies changes.

#### **Trusted Access**

Enable or disable the Setting Check function for Trusted IP address changes.

Timer		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
10 to 3600 seconds	Specify the time (in seconds) the user has to confirm the changes. If the timer expires and the changes were not confirmed, the system will automatically revert to the previous settings.	180 (seconds)

For example, if a remote user (IP: 10.10.10.10) connects to the Industrial Secure Router and changes the Trusted IP address to 10.10.10.12, or accidentally disables the Trusted IP entry and applies the changes, the connection to the Industrial Secure Router will be lost because the IP address is no longer in the Industrial Secure Router's Trusted IP list.

Edit Index 1		
Status *		
IP Address *		
10.10.10.12		
Netmask * 255.255.255.255		
		_
	CANCEL	APPLY

If the user enables the Setting Check function for Trusted IP list changes and the confirm Timer is set to 15 seconds, when the user clicks the **APPLY** button on the Trusted IP list page, the Industrial Secure Router will execute the configuration change and the web browser will attempt to go to the Setting Check Confirmed page automatically. Because the remote user's IP address is not in the new Trusted IP list, the remote user cannot connect to the Setting Check Confirmed page. After 15 seconds, the timer will expire and the Industrial Secure Router will roll back to the original Trusted IP List settings, allowing the remote user to reconnect to the Industrial Secure Router.



The page you are looking for is currently unavailable. The Web site might be experiencing technical difficulties, or you may need to adjust your browser settings.

Please try the following:

- Click the 🚯 Refresh button, or try again later.
- If you typed the page address in the Address bar, make sure that it is spelled correctly.
- To check your connection settings, click the **Tools** menu, and then click **Internet Options**. On the **Connections** tab, click **Settings**. The settings should match those provided by your local area network (LAN) administrator or Internet service provider (ISP).
- See if your Internet connection settings are being detected. You can set Microsoft Windows to examine your network and automatically discover network connection settings (if your network administrator has enabled this setting).
  - Click the Tools menu, and then click Internet Options.
  - 2. On the Connections tab, click LAN Settings.
  - 3. Select Automatically detect settings, and then click OK.

If the new configuration does not block the remote user's connection to the Industrial Secure Router, the user will see the Setting Check Confirmed page. Click **CONFIRM** to save and apply the changes.

# Cellular

The Cellular section allows users to configure mobile network connection settings.

## General

#### Cellular Module

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the cellular module for establishing cellular connections, send SMS messages, and use GNSS services.	Enabled

Cellular Operation Mode			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Router	The device will function as an IP router for IP data communication.	Router	

#### Cellular Data Connection

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable cellular data connections. If enabled, cellular connections will incur data usage cost based on the ISP used.	Enabled
МТИ		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
576 to 1500	Enter the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) value for router mode. The recommended MTU size may vary depending on the cellular carrier. Make sure the end device is set to the same MTU value for optimal performance.	Enabled

## **SIM Settings**

The SIM Settings page lets you enable or disable SIM cards and manage the SIM card settings including the priority, cellular bands, and authentication method.

Ce	llul	ar										
	Ge	neral		SIM Set	ings	GuaranL	ink		Status			
	t≡	¢								Q Sea	ırch	
			SIM	Priority	Status	Carrier	Cellular	Band	APN	Username	Authentication	
1	•	r	1	1	Enabled	AT&T	Manual				Auto	
		1	2	2	Enabled	Generic	Auto				Auto	
												1 – 2 of 2

## **Reordering SIM Card Priority**

The device will always connect to the Internet using the SIM card designated with priority 1. The secondary SIM card will act as a redundant backup.

To change the priority of the SIM cards, click the **Reorder Priorities** ( $\ddagger$ ) icon then click and drag the SIM

card to the desired priority. Click the **Finish Reorder** (1) icon to confirm the change.

## **Changing the Active SIM Card**

The green dot icon indicates the SIM card is active and connected to the Internet. By default, the SIM card designated with priority 1 will be used to connect to the Internet while the SIM with priority 2 acts as a backup. If necessary, you can manually change the active SIM card.

Click the **Change SIM** (  $\stackrel{r}{\leftarrow}$  ) icon to swap the active SIM card.

## **Editing SIM Card Settings**

Click the pencil ( ) icon next to the SIM card you want to modify to edit its parameters.

Edit SIM 1 Set	tings			
Status *				
Disabled	-			
Carrier * Generic	•			
Cellular Band Type *				
Auto	•			
APN		PIN	Ø	
	0 / 40		0 / 8	
Authentication *				
PAP	•			
Username		Password	ø	
	0/32		0 / 32	
			CANCEL	APPLY

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the SIM card.	Enabled

#### Carrier

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Carrier	Select the carrier to use with the SIM card.	Generic

#### Cellular Band Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
ALITO	The device automatically negotiates the optimal cellular band frequency with the base station.	Auto
Manual	Manually specify the cellular band frequencies to use.	

#### Cellular Band (for Manual cellular band type)

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select which cellular frequencies to use with this SIM card. Make sure your cellular carrier supports the selected bands.	Enabled

#### APN

Setting	Description	Factory Default
APN	Enter the access point network (APN) information if provided by your cellular carrier. The cellular carrier may provide different APN information to provide different service levels.	Enabled

PIN		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 8 characters	Enter the PIN number to unlock the SIM card.	None

### NOTE

Entering the wrong PIN code three times in a row will lock the SIM card.

Authentication		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Auto	Set up a session without specifying the authentication method.	
PAP	Use PAP (Password Authentication Protocol) authentication. PAP will send the username and password to the server for authentication against the server's database.	Auto
СНАР	Use CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol) authentication. CHAP will generate a password which is changed frequently for improved identity security.	

#### Username (for PAP authentication)

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 32 characters	Enter the username for PAP authentication.	None
Password (for PAP a	authentication)	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 32 characters	Enter the password for PAP authentication.	None

## GuaranLink

A number of factors can contribute to connection failures in cellular communications, including loss of cellular signal, interference, connection errors caused by the base station, or termination by the operator for unknown reasons. Moxa's proprietary GuaranLink feature, which is different from the basic heartbeat function, enables reliable connectivity with 3 different connection checks and 4 levels of recovery actions. It is designed to fulfill different needs like minimizing the cellular cost without sending excessive cellular packets or optimizing the time it takes to swap to the backup SIM.

General	SIM Settings	Guara	anLink	Status
GuaranLink *				
Enabled	<b>V</b>			
Connection Alive (	Check			
	Check Ping Interval *			
Check Timing *				
Check Timing *	Ping Interval *	min.		
Check Timing *	Ping Interval * 10	min.	Ping Failure Retr	y Times *
Connection Alive ( <sup>Check Timing *</sup> Always Ping Host 1	Ping Interval * 10	min.	Ping Failure Retr	y Times *

GuaranLink		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable GuaranLink. If enabled, the device will monitor cellular connections. If a connection failure is detected, the device will attempt to automatically recover the connection. Note that enabling this function will send additional alive check cellular messages, which may incur additional cellular costs.	None

#### Check Time

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Always	The device will constantly send out alive check packets to check for cellular connection issues.	
Idle Transmission	The device will only send alive check packets when the device has not received any data transmissions during the specified Ping Interval period (in minutes).	Always
Poor Signal	The device will only send alive check packets when the device identifies poor signal quality.	

If **Check Time** is set to **Always**, configure the following parameters:

Ping Interval		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 86400	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which the device will send out an alive check packet.	10

### Ping Host 1/2

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Enter the IP address or domain name of the remote host to ping.	
IP address/domain name	If both ping host 1 and 2 are configured, the device will perform connection alive checks for both hosts simultaneously. The device will only consider the connection failed if the device receives no response from both hosts.	8.8.8.8

#### Ping Failure Retry Times

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 10	Specify the number of times the device will perform the connection alive check. If the check fails the specified number of retry times, the device will determine the cellular connection has failed and will initiate the GuaranLink recovery process.	3

If **Check Time** is set to **Idle Transmission**, configure the following parameters:

#### Idle Transmission Interval

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 600	Specify the interval (in minutes) the device will wait for data transmissions. If no data transmissions take place during the interval, the device will perform a connection alive check.	5

#### Ping Host 1/2

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Enter the IP address or domain name of the remote host to ping.	
IP address/domain name	If both ping host 1 and 2 are configured, the device will perform connection alive checks for both hosts simultaneously. The device will only consider the connection failed if the device receives no response from both hosts.	None

#### Ping Failure Retry Times

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 10	Specify the number of times the device will perform the connection alive check. If the check fails the specified number of retry times, the device will determine the cellular connection has failed and will initiate the GuaranLink recovery process.	3

If **Check Time** is set to **Poor Signal**, configure the following parameters:

C	Cl	Testanel
Signai	Checking	Interval

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 600	Specify the interval (in minutes) the device will check the host for poor signal quality. If the device identifies the host has poor signal quality, the device will perform a connection alive check.	5

#### Ping Host 1/2

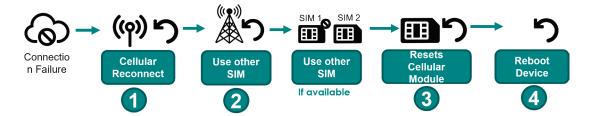
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Enter the IP address or domain name of the remote host to	
	ping.	
IP address/domain	If both ping host 1 and 2 are configured, the device will	None
name	perform connection alive checks for both hosts	None
	simultaneously. The device will only consider the connection	
	failed if the device receives no response from both hosts.	

#### Ping Failure Retry Times

ing ranac kery innes		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the number of times the device will perform the	
	connection alive check. If the check fails the specified number	
1 to 10	of retry times, the device will determine the cellular	3
	connection has failed and will initiate the GuaranLink recovery	
	process.	

## **GuaranLink Recovery Settings**

GuaranLink follows a sequential 4-stage recovery process to restore a failed cellular connection. If the first recovery action fails, it will move to the next action.



### **Editing GuaranLink Recovery Settings**

You can adjust the criteria of these recovery options based on your specific requirements.

Click the pencil (  $\checkmark$  ) icon to modify the relevant recovery stage parameters.

#### **GuaranLink Recovery Settings**

Recovery Step	Recovery Action	Execute Times
1	Cellular Reconnect	1
2	ISP Reregister	1
3	Cellular Module Reset	3
4	System Reboot	1

Edit Recovery Execute Times				
Step 1 Cellular	Reconnect			
Execute Times *				
1	•			
Step 2 ISP Rere	gister			
Execute Times *				
1	-			
Step 3 Cellular	Module Reset			
Step 3 Cellular Execute Times *	Module Reset			
	Module Reset			
Execute Times *	Module Reset			
Execute Times *	Module Reset			
Execute Times *	•			
Execute Times * 3	•			
Execute Times * 3 Step 4 System	•			
Execute Times * 3 Step 4 System Execute Times *	•			
Execute Times * 3 Step 4 System Execute Times *	•			

#### Step 1 Cellular Reconnect

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	The device will disconnect and attempt to re-establish the cellular connection for the specified number of attempts.	
0 to 5	If the connection is not restored after the specified amount of execute times, the device will move on to the next recovery step.	1
	If set to 0, the device will skip this step and move on to the next recovery step.	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	The device will re-register with the ISP to obtain a new IP address from the base station.	
0 to 5	If the connection is not restored after the specified amount of execute times, the device will move on to the next recovery step.	1
	If set to 0, the device will skip this step and move on to the next recovery step.	

#### Step 3 Cellular Module Reset

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	The device will reset the cellular module.	
0 to 10	If the connection is not restored after the specified amount of execute times, the device will move on to the next recovery step.	3
	If set to 0, the device will skip this step and move on to the next recovery step.	

Step 4 System Reboot		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	The device will reboot the system.	
0 to 1	If the connection is not restored after the specified amount of execute times, the device will move on to the next recovery step.	1
	If set to 0, the device will not perform a system reboot.	

## Status

The Status screen shows the current status of the cellular connection, information about the cellular carrier and SIM card, cellular module, and signal strength.

General	SIM Settings	GuaranLink	Status		
Cellular Status		•	•	Cellular Module Information Cellular Module Enabled	Cellular Module Firmware SWI9X07Y 02.37.07.0
SIM	Singal	Register Connect	ion Internet	IMEI 356531111754614	34197071_02.37.07.0
Carrier and SIM				Signal Status	
Cellular SIM SIM 1		SIM 1 Status Active		Singal Strength Good	
Cellular Carrier Taiwan Mobile		SIM 1 Phone Number 0912345678		Received Singal Strength Indicator (RSSI) Good (-70 dBm)	
Cellular Mode LTE		SIM 1 ICCID 1234567890123456789	0	Reference Singal Received Power(RSRP) Good (-80 dBm)	
Cellular Band Band 1 (2100 MHz)		SIM 2 Status SIM Absent		Reference Singal Received Quality (RSRQ) Good (-8 dB)	
Cellular IP Address 466011700772218		SIM 2 Phone Number		Singal to Interference and Noise Ratio (SINR) Good (26 dB)	
IMSI 10.196.94.126		SIM 2 ICCID			

### Cellular Status

Field	Description
	The status of the SIM card.
SIM	Green: The SIM card is active
	Red: The SIM card is inactive.

Field	Description
	The cellular signal status.
Signal	Green: The signal is good.
	Red: No signal.
	The cellular registration status.
Register	Green: The device successfully registered with the base station.
	Red: The device failed to register with the base station.
	The network connection status.
Connection	Green: The device obtained an IP address from the base station.
	Red: The device failed to obtain an IP address from the base station.
	The Internet connection status.
Internet	Green: The device is connected to the Internet.
	Red: The device failed to connect to the Internet.

#### **Cellular Module Information**

Field	Description
Cellular Module	The current status of the cellular module.
Cellular Module	The firmware version of the cellular module.
Software	
IMEI	The International Mobile Equipment Identity number.

#### Carrier and SIM

Field	Description
Cellular SIM	The SIM card used for establishing the cellular connection.
Cellular Carrier	The cellular service provider used.
Cellular Mode	The cellular connection technology (LTE, HSPA,) used.
Cellular Band	The cellular band frequency in use.
Cellular IP Address	The cellular IP address assigned by the cellular carrier.
IMSI	The International Mobile Subscriber Identity number.
SIM 1 Status	The status of the SIM card installed in SIM slot 1.
SIM 1 Phone Number	The phone number of the SIM card in SIM slot 1.
SIM 1 ICCID	The Integrated Circuit Card ID of the SIM card in SIM slot 1.
SIM 2 Status	The status of the SIM card installed in SIM slot 2.
SIM 2 Phone Number	The phone number of the SIM card in SIM slot 2.
SIM 2 ICCID	The Integrated Circuit Card ID of the SIM card in SIM slot 2.

#### Signal Status

Field	Description	
Signal Strength	The current overall signal strength of the device.	
RSRP (Reference Signal	The current RSRP.	
Received Power)	Good: Higher than -85dBm	
	Average: -85 to -105dBm	
	Poor: -105 to -115 dBm	
	Inadequate: Less than-115 dBm	
RSSI (Received Signal	The current RSSI.	
Strength Indicator)	Good: Higher than -73 dBm	
	Average: -73 to -89 dBm	
	Poor: -89 to -113 dBm	
	Inadequate: Less than -113 dBm	
RSRQ (Reference Signal	The current RSRQ.	
Received Quality)	Good: Higher than -10 dB	
	Average: -10 to -15 dB	
	Poor: -15 to -20 dB	
	Inadequate: Less than -20 dB	
SINR (Signal to	The current SINR.	
Interference and Noise	Good: Higher than 25 dB	
Ratio)	Average: 11 to 25 dB	
	Poor: 3 to 11 dB	
	Inadequate: Less than 3 dB	

# Serial

## **Port Settings**

The Port Settings screen lets you enable or disable the serial port and configure the serial communication parameters. When enabled, the device allows for traditional serial (RS-232/422/485) devices to transmit data over the cellular network. The serial port settings on the device should match the parameters configured for the connected serial device. Refer to the serial device's user manual to determine the appropriate serial communication parameters.

### Serial

ierial Port * Disabled	Port Settings	Operation Mode	Data Packing	Status	Serial Data Logs	
Disabled •   Interface Type *   RS-232   Baud Rate *   I15200   •   Data Bits *   Baud Rate *   I   • <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th>						
Interface Type * RS-232 Baud Rate * 115200 Data Bits * Stop Bits *	Serial Port *					
RS-232     •       Baud Rate *       115200       •       Data Bits *       8     •       1       •       Parity *       None	Disabled	•				
Baud Rate * 115200   Total Bits * Stop Bits * 8  Total Bits * 9 Parity * None	Interface Type *					
115200     •       Data Bits *     Stop Bits *       8     •       1     •       Parity *       None     •	RS-232	*				
Data Bits * Stop Bits * 8 • 1 • Parity * None •	Baud Rate *					
8 • 1 • Parity * None •	115200	*				
Parity * None -	Data Bits *	Stop Bits *				
None •	8	<u>*</u> 1	•			
	Parity *					
Flow Control *	None	*				
	Flow Control *					
RTS, CTS 👻	RTS, CTS	-				
	D . D (( ·	l Loas Settinas				
Port Buffering and Logs Settings						
Serial Port Buffering (10MB) *	Serial Port Buffering (10MB					
	Serial Port Buffering (10MB	3) *				
Serial Port Buffering (10MB) *	Serial Port Buffering (10ME Disabled	3) *				

#### Serial Port

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the serial port.	Disabled

Interface Type		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
RS-232, RS-422,		
2-wire-RS-485,	Select the serial interface for the serial device.	RS-232
2-wire-RS-485		

Baud Rate

buuu Nate		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
300 to 921600	Specify the data transmission rate to and from the serial device.	115200
Data Bits		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
5 to 8	Specify the size of the data character.	8

Stop Bits		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 2	Specify the size of the stop character.	1
Parity		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
None, Even, Odd, Space, Mark	Select the parity mode. Even and Odd parity provide rudimentary error-checking. Space and Mark parity are rarely used.	None
Flow Control		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
None, RTS/CTS, DTR/DSR, Xon/Xoff	Select the flow control method. This determines how the system will suspend and resume data transmissions to prevent data loss. RTS/CTS (hardware) flow control is recommended.	RTS/CTS
Port Buffering		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable serial port buffering. If the WAN connection is down, the router will keep the serial data and retransmit the buffered data when the WAN connection is back. If disabled, serial data is lost if the WAN connection is down.	Disabled

## NOTE

Port buffering can be used in Real COM, Reverse Real COM, RFC2217, TCP Server, and TCP Client modes. For other modes, the port buffering settings will have no effect. The maximum buffer size is 10 MB. Buffer data exceeding 10 MB will overwrite previous data.

#### Serial Data Logs

Se	tting	Description	Factory Default
En	abled or Disabled	Enable or disable serial data logs. If enabled, the router will	Disabled
	abled of Disabled	store the serial data logs on the system RAM.	Disabled

## NOTE

The system RAM can save up to 64 kb of serial data logs. Serial log data will be cleared when the router powered off.

## **Operation Mode**

The industrial secure router enables traditional serial (RS-232/422/485) devices to transmit data over the cellular network and allows you to access, manage, and configure remote facilities and equipment over the cellular network from anywhere in the world. The operation mode determines how the device's serial port will interact with the network. Which operation mode to select will depend on your specific application.

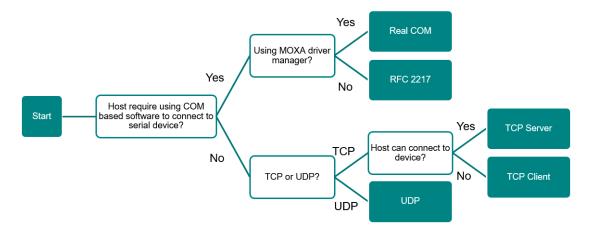
Traditional SCADA and data collection systems rely on the serial port to collect data from various types of instruments. Some software is required to connect the serial device to the COM port on the host computer. The Real COM and RFC 2217 modes allow you to expand a virtual COM port for a host computer on demand. As long as your host computer supports the TCP/IP protocol, SCADA and data collection systems will be able to access all instruments connected to a standard TCP/IP network, regardless of whether the devices are used locally or at a remote site.

The main difference between Real COM and RFC 2217 mode is that Real COM mode requires MOXA Windows Driver Manager to be installed on the host. The RFC 2217 mode allows third party drivers that support the RFC 2217 standard to perform virtual COM mapping to the serial port on the industrial secure router.

Some applications do not require the serial device to be physically connected connect to a COM port, but only need to establish a connection to receive data from the serial device. In that case, you can use TCP or

UDP mode to establish the connection. The main difference between the TCP and UDP protocols is that TCP guarantees delivery of data by requiring the recipient to send an acknowledgement to the sender. UDP does not require this type of verification, making it possible to offer faster delivery.

TCP Server mode allows the host to request a connection to the industrial secure router. In TCP Client mode, the industrial secure router actively establishes a connection to a host computer for serial data transmission. If the industrial secure router is using a cellular connection and is difficult to access via fixed IP or VPN, you should select TCP Client mode and directly connect to the host.

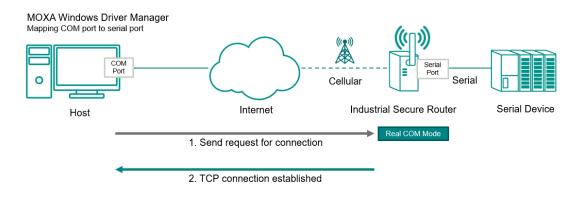


### **Real COM Mode**

In Real COM mode, the bundled drivers can establish a transparent connection between a host and a serial device by mapping the serial port on the industrial secure router to a local COM port on the host computer.

One of the major benefits of using Real COM mode is that it allows you to use software that was written for strictly serial communication applications. The Moxa driver manager intercepts data sent to the host's COM port, packs it into a TCP/IP packet, and then redirects it through the host's Ethernet card to the Internet. At the other end of the connection, the industrial secure router accepts the IP frame from the cellular network, unpacks the TCP/IP packet, and then transparently sends the data through the serial port to the attached serial device. This operation mode supports up to 2 simultaneous connections, enabling multiple hosts to collect data from the same serial device at the same time.

Make sure your cellular service provider offers a fixed public IP address or VPN solution to allow the host to access to the industrial secure router.



Serial			
Port Settings	Ope	eration Mode	Data Packing
Operation Mode *			
RealCOM	•		
Connection Setting	15		
TCP Alive Check Interval	,0		
7	$\hat{}$		
1 - 99	min.		
Max. Connections			
1	$\hat{}$		
1 - 2 conne	ection		
Connection Down Se	ttings		
Connection Down Set Set RTS Signal *	ttings	Set DTR Signal *	

#### **Connection Settings**

TCP Alive Check Interval			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
1 to 99	Specify the interval (in minutes) at which to check if the TCP connection is still alive. If there is no response from the other end of the connection after the specified time, the TCP connection will be terminated. A setting of 0 means the system will keep the TCP connection open and will not send any "keep alive" packets. Disabling this option can help free up device resources.	7	

#### Max. Connections

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 2	Specify the maximum number of simultaneous connections that the port will accept. Up to 2 hosts can simultaneously collect data from the same serial device.	1

#### **Connection Down Settings**

You can configure what happens to the RTS and DTR signals when the cellular or Ethernet connection goes down. For some applications, serial devices require RTS or DTR signals sent via the serial port to know the cellular or Ethernet link status.

#### Set RTS Signal

Setting	Description	Factory Default
High	The cellular or Ethernet connection status will not affect RTS signals.	-Hiah
Low	If the cellular or Ethernet connection is lost, RTS signals will change to low.	Thgn

#### Set DTR Signal

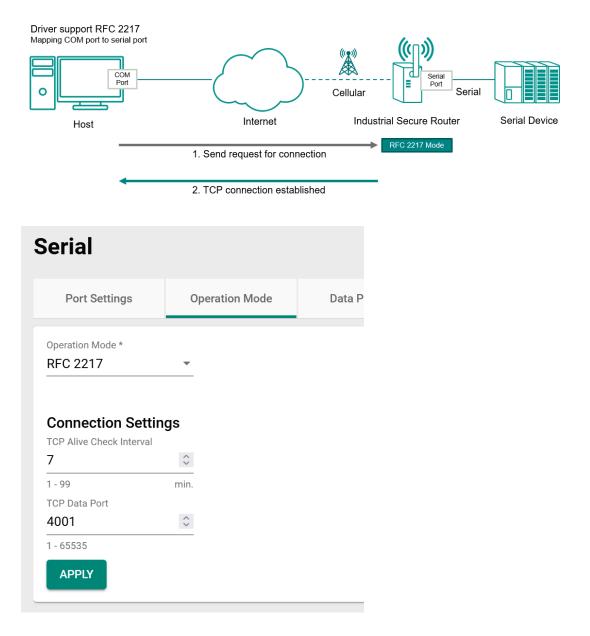
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
High	The cellular or Ethernet connection status will not affect DTR signals.	High	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Low	If the cellular or Ethernet connection is lost, DTR signals will	
LOW	change to low.	

## RFC 2217 Mode

Similar to Real COM mode, RFC-2217 mode also uses a driver to establish a transparent connection between a host computer and a serial device by mapping the serial port on the Industrial Secure Router to a local COM port on the host computer. RFC2217 defines general COM port control options based on the Telnet protocol. Third party drivers supporting RFC-2217 are widely available on the Internet and can be used to implement virtual COM mapping to serial port on the Industrial Secure Router.

Make sure your cellular service provider offers a fixed public IP address or VPN solution to allow the host to access to the industrial secure router.

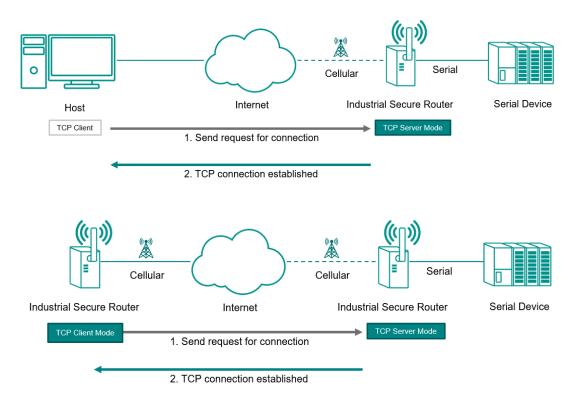


TCP Alive Check	(Interval	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 99	Specify the interval (in minutes) at which to check if the TCP connection is still alive. If there is no response from the other end of the connection after the specified time, the TCP connection will be terminated. A setting of 0 means the system will keep the TCP connection open and will not send any "keep alive" packets. Disabling this option can help free up device resources.	7
TCP Data Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the TCP port number for the serial port used to listen to connections and used by other devices to contact the serial port. To avoid conflicts with well-known TCP ports, the default is set to 4001.	4000

## **TCP Server Mode**

In TCP Server mode, the serial port on the Industrial Secure Router is assigned a unique IP/port combination on a TCP/IP network. The host computer initiates contact with the Industrial Secure Router, establishes the connection, and receives data from the serial device. This operation mode supports up to 2 simultaneous connections, enabling multiple hosts to collect data from the same serial device at the same time.

Make sure your cellular service provider offers a fixed public IP address or VPN solution to allow the host to access to the industrial secure router.



an anna an anna an Anna Anna Anna Anna			
-			
Connection Sett	ings		
TCP Alive Check Interva			
7	$\bigcirc$		
1 - 99	min.		
Max. Connections			
1	$\sim$		
1-2 c	onnection		
TCP Data Port		TCP Command Port	
4001	$\diamond$	966	$\hat{}$
1 - 65535		1 - 65535	
Serial Port Inactivity Tim	ie		
0	$\diamond$		
0 - 65535	ms		
Connection Down	Settings		
Set RTS Signal *	coungo	Set DTR Signal *	
5	-	High	-

#### TCP Alive Check Interval

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
1 to 99	Specify the interval (in minutes) at which to check if the TCP connection is still alive. If there is no response from the other end of the connection after the specified time, the TCP connection will be terminated. A setting of 0 means the system will keep the TCP connection open and will not send any "keep alive" packets. Disabling this option can help free up device resources.	7	

#### Max. Connections

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 2	Specify the maximum number of simultaneous connections that the port will accept. Up to 2 hosts can simultaneously collect data from the same serial device.	1

TCP Data Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the TCP port number for the serial port used to listen to connections and used by other devices to contact the serial port. To avoid conflicts with well-known TCP ports, the default is set to 4001.	

#### TCP Command Port

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the TCP port number for MOXA IP-Serial Library commands. It is not necessary to reference this port number in your application when using the Moxa IP-Serial Library, since the library automatically obtains the number from the device server. Only change this setting if there is a port number conflict with another application or device.	996

#### Serial Port Inactivity Time

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the time limit (in ms) for keeping the connection open if there is no data to or from the serial device. If there is no activity for the specified time period, the connection will be terminated. A setting of 0 means the system will always keep the TCP connection open regardless of data activity. For many applications, this option should be set to 0, as the serial device may be idle for long periods of time.	0



### ATTENTION

Serial Port Inactivity Time setting should be greater than the Force Transmit Interval under Data Packing setting page. Otherwise, the connection may be closed before the data in the buffer can be transmitted. To prevent the unintended loss of data due to the session being disconnected, it is highly recommended that this value is set large enough so that the intended data transfer is completed.

#### **Connection Down Settings**

You can configure what happens to the RTS and DTR signals when the cellular or Ethernet connection goes down. For some applications, serial devices require RTS or DTR signals sent via the serial port to know the cellular or Ethernet link status.

#### Set RTS Signal

Setting	Description	Factory Default
High	The cellular or Ethernet connection status will not affect RTS	
	signals.	- High
Low	If the cellular or Ethernet connection is lost, RTS signals will	Tiigii
	change to low.	

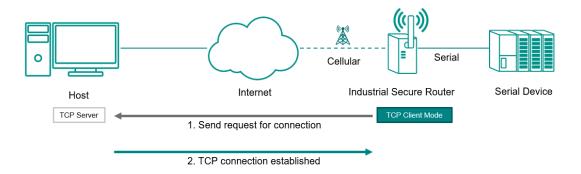
#### Set DTR Signal

Setting	Description	Factory Default
High	The cellular or Ethernet connection status will not affect DTR signals.	- High
Low	If the cellular or Ethernet connection is lost, DTR signals will change to low.	

### **TCP Client Mode**

In TCP Client Mode, the Industrial Secure Router can actively establish a TCP connection with a predetermined host computer when serial data arrives. After the data has been transferred, the Industrial Secure Router can disconnect automatically from the host computer by using the TCP alive check time or inactivity time settings.

Make sure your cellular service provider offers a fixed public IP address or VPN solution to allow the host to access to the industrial secure router.



TCP Client	•
0	
Connection Settin	gs
7	$\hat{}$
1 - 99	min
Serial Port Inactivity Time	
0	$\hat{}$
0 - 65535	m
Connection Control *	
Startup/None	-

#### **TCP Alive Check Interval**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 99	Specify the interval (in minutes) at which to check if the TCP connection is still alive. If there is no response from the other end of the connection after the specified time, the TCP connection will be terminated. A setting of 0 means the system will keep the TCP connection open and will not send any "keep alive" packets. Disabling this option can help free up device resources.	7

Serial Port Inactivity Time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	the TCP connection open regardless of data activity. For many applications, this option should be set to 0, as the	0
	serial device may be idle for long periods of time.	



### ATTENTION

Serial Port Inactivity Time setting should be greater than the Force Transmit Interval under Data Packing setting page. Otherwise, the connection may be closed before the data in the buffer can be transmitted. To prevent the unintended loss of data due to the session being disconnected, it is highly recommended that this value is set large enough so that the intended data transfer is completed.



## **ATTENTION**

The serial port inactivity time is only applied when the **Connection Control** option (see below) is set to Any Character/Inactivity Time.

Connection Control				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Startup/None	A TCP connection will be established on startup and will remain active indefinitely.	Startup/None		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any Character/None	A TCP connection will be established when any character is	
	received from the serial interface and will remain active	
	indefinitely.	
Any Character/	A TCP connection will be established when any character is	
Inactivity Time	received from the serial interface and will be disconnected	
	after the specified Serial Port Inactivity Time.	
DSR On/DSR Off	A TCP connection will be established when a DSR "On" signal	
	is received and will be disconnected when a DSR "Off" signal is	
	received.	
SR On/None A TCP connection will be established when a DSR "On" signa		1
	is received and will remain active indefinitely.	
DCD On/DCD Off	A TCP connection will be established when a DCD "On" signal	1
	is received and will be disconnected when a DCD "Off" signal	
	is received.	
DCD On/None	A TCP connection will be established when a DCD "On" signal	1
	is received and will remain active indefinitely.	

#### Destination Settings

Destination Settings					
	•				<b>Q</b> Search
		IP Address	Destination Data Port	Local Data Port	
		19.122.111.111	4001	60	
	Max. 4				

From the Destination Settings table, you can configure up to 4 remote host destinations.

## Add a Destination Entry (TCP)

From the Destination Settings table, click the Add ( $\blacksquare$ ) icon to add a new entry.

	Δ	
	!\	
_	_	

### ATTENTION

While the Industrial Secure Router supports connections to up to 4 remote hosts, a low connection speed or throughput on one of the connections will affect the performance of the other active connections.

÷				Q Search
	IP Address	Destination Data Port	Local Data Port	
	19.122.111.111	4001	60	

Add Destination	
IP Address *	
Destination Data Port * 🗘	
Local Data Port *	
	CANCEL

#### **IP Address**

Setting	Factory Default			
IP Address	None			
Destination Data Port				
Destination Dat	a Port			
Destination Dat Setting	a Port Description	Factory Default		

Local Data Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify a designated local port or leave this field blank to let the system assign a port.	None

## Modify a Destination Entry (TCP)

From the Destination Settings table, click the **Edit** (  $\checkmark$  ) icon to edit an existing entry.

Refer to Add a Destination Entry (TCP) for information about each field.

### **Delete a Destination Entry**

From the Destination Settings table, check the box of the entry or entries you want to delete and click the

Delete ( 🛢 ) icon.

Ē	n Settings			Q Search
	IP Address	Destination Data Port	Local Data Port	
•	19.122.111.111	4001	60	
Max. 4				

### **UDP Mode**

Compared to TCP communication, UDP is faster and more efficient. In UDP mode, you can unicast to one host or multicast to multiple hosts and the serial device can receive data from one or multiple host computers. These traits make UDP mode especially well-suited for message display applications.

Host	Interne Send data		Serial al Secure Router	Serial Device
Serial				
Port Settings	Operation Mode	Data Packing		
Operation Mode * UDP	<b>*</b>			
Connection Settin UDP Data Port 4001	ngs			
1 - 65535 APPLY			_	

UDP Data Port				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
1 to 65535	Enter the UDP port number for contacting the serial device.	4001		

## Add a Destination Entry (UDP)

From the Destination Settings table, click the Add ( $\blacksquare$ ) icon to add a new entry.

Destination Settings				
	٠			
		Start IP Address	End IP Address	Destination Data Port
	Max. 4			

Add Destination		
Start IP Address *		
End IP Address *		
Destination Data Port * 🗘		
	CANCEL	CREATE

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the starting IP address of the IP range of the remote host.	None
End IP Address		
End IP Address Setting	Description	Factory Default



## ATTENTION

The maximum IP address range size is 64 addresses. However, when using multicast, you may enter IP addresses in the form xxx.xxx.255 in the **Start IP Address** field. For example, enter 192.168.127.255 to allow the system to broadcast UDP packets to all hosts with IP addresses between 192.168.127.1 and 192.168.127.254.

Destination Data Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Enter the UDP port number of the remote host.	None

## Modify a Destination Entry (UDP)

From the Destination Settings table, click the **Edit** (  $\checkmark$  ) icon to edit an existing entry.

Refer to Add a Destination Entry (UDP) for information about each field.

### **Delete a Destination Entry**

From the Destination Settings table, check the box of the entry or entries you want to delete and click the

Delete ( 🛢 ) icon.

stinatio	on Settings			
Î				<b>Q</b> Search
	IP Address	Destination Data Port	Local Data Port	
	• 19.122.111.111	4001	60	
Max. 4				

## **Data Packing**

From the Data Packing screen, you can configure the conditions and delimiter settings for serial port data buffering and transmission.

## Serial

Port Settings	ings Operation I		Data Packing	Status	
Packet Length					
0	$\hat{\cdot}$				
0 - 1024	bytes				
Force Transmit Interval					
0	$\hat{}$				
0 - 65535	ms				
Disabled	•	0x00 Hex digit			
Delimiter 2 Enable *		Delimiter 2 *			
	•	0x00			
Disabled					
Disabled		Hex digit			
Disabled Delimiter Process * Delimiter		Hex digit			

Packet Length		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 1024	Specify the Packet Length (in bytes) for the serial port buffer. The packet length refers to the maximum amount of data that is allowed to accumulate in the serial port buffer before sending. At the default packet length of 0, no maximum amount is specified and data in the buffer will be sent as specified by the delimiter settings or when the buffer is full. If a packet length of 1 to 1024 bytes is specified, data in the buffer will be sent as soon as it reaches the specified length.	0

#### Force Transmit Interval

Setting	Description	<b>Factory Default</b>
0 to 65535	Specify the interval (in ms) to force-transmit serial port data if	
	no activity is recorded. This setting controls data packing by	
	the amount of time that elapses between bits of data. As	
	serial data is received, it accumulates in the device port's	
	buffer. If serial data is not received for the specified amount of	0
	time, the data that is currently in the buffer is packed for	
	network transmission. A setting of 0 means that data in the	
	buffer will not be automatically packed when additional data is	
	not received from the device.	

#### **Delimiter Settings**

Delimiter 1/2 E	Enable	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled	The serial port will queue the data in the buffer and send it to the cellular or Ethernet port when a specific character, entered in hex format, is received. A second delimiter character can be enabled and specified in the Delimiter 2 field, so that both characters act as the delimiter to control when data should be sent.	Disabled
Disabled	The serial port will not check any specific character for data transmission.	

#### Delimiter 1/2

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Hex digit	Enter the specific character that acts as the delimiter to control when data should be sent.	0×00



## ATTENTION

When the device port buffer is full, the data will be packed for network transmission regardless of the Delimiter 1, Delimiter 2, and Force Transmit Interval settings.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Delimiter	Data in the buffer will be transmitted when the delimiter is	
	received.	
Delimiter + 1	Data in the buffer will be transmitted after 1 additional byte is	1
	received following the delimiter.	Delimiter
Delimiter + 2	Data in the buffer will be transmitted after 2 additional bytes	Deminiter
	are received following the delimiter.	
Strip Delimiter	Data in the buffer is first stripped of the delimiter before being	]
	transmitted.	

## Status

The Status screen provides detailed statistics and information about the serial port data and connections.

	Operation Mode Da	ta Packing	Status	Serial Data Logs			
rial State		Serial Co	unter				2023/03/27 14:22:02
DSR DTR RTS		TX Count 1760	TX Total Count 1760	RX Count 0	RX Total Count 0		
CTS		Error Cou	unter				
DCD		Frame Error C O	Count Parity Error Count 0	Overrun Count O	Break Count O		
nnection List						<b>Q</b> Search	
	P Address						
Operation Mode I							

## Serial Data Logs

The Serial Data Logs screen shows a record of all collected serial data logs, viewable in ASCII or HEX format.

Serial					
Port Settings	Operation Mode	Data Packing	Status	Serial Data Logs	
C 🗊 🗋					ASCII HEX
2023/03/27 06:20	:02[T] 27/03/2314:20:0	6 0200:09:21 2425346			
2023/03/27 06:20	:05[T] 27/03/2314:20:0	9 0200:04:27 9038607			
2023/03/27 06:20	:08[T] 27/03/2314:20:1	2 0200:04:35 1949821			
2023/03/27 06:20	:11[T] 27/03/2314:20:1	5 0200:14:32 794880			
2023/03/27 06:20	:14[T] 27/03/2314:20:1	8 0200:04:25 1651100			
2023/03/27 06:20	:17[T] 27/03/2314:20:2	1 0200:05:01 8945409			
2023/03/27 06:20	:20[T] 27/03/2314:20:2	4 0200:09:32 8295693			
2023/03/27 06:20	:23[T] 27/03/2314:20:2	7 0200:06:57 1225066			
2023/03/27 06:20	:26[T] 27/03/2314:20:3	0 0200:06:09 2653870			
2023/03/27 06:20	:29[T] 27/03/2314:20:3	3 0200:12:12 5407305	5		

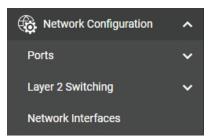
Click the  $\ensuremath{^{\textbf{C}}}$  icon to refresh the serial data logs.

Click the  $\mathbf{e}^{\mathbf{e}}$  icon to delete all serial data logs.

Click the D icon to export all serial data logs to a file.

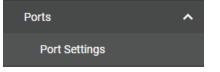
This chapter describes how to configure the physical ports and network interfaces of the Industrial Secure Router.

From the **Network Configuration** section, you can configure the **Ports**, **Layer 2 Switching**, and **Network Interfaces** settings.



## **Ports**

From the **Ports** section, the following functions can be configured: **Port Settings**.



## **Port Settings**

Port settings let you manage port access, port transmission speed, flow control, and port type (MDI or MDIX).

## Setting

Po	rt S	etting	gs					
	Set	tting		Status				
								<b>Q</b> Search
l.		Port	Status	Media Type	Description	Speed/Duplex	Flow Control	MDI/MDIX
17	/	1	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
	/	2	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto

## **Modify Port Settings**

Click the  $\checkmark$  icon to modify the settings of the corresponding port.

Edit Port 1 Se	ettings
Status Enabled	-
Media Type	
1000TX,RJ45	
Description	
Speed/Duplex Mode	
Auto	•
Flow Control	
Disabled	•
MDI/MDIX	
Auto	-
Auto	

Configure the following settings:

Status					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the port.	Enabled			
Media Type					

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Media type	Displays the port's media type.	Current media type	

Description					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Max. 127 characters	Enter a description for the port. This helps administrators differentiate between different ports more easily. Example: PLC 1	None			

#### Speed/Duplex Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Auto	Allow the port to use the IEEE 802.3u protocol to negotiate the port speed and duplex mode with the connected device. The port and connected device will determine the best speed for that connection.	
1G Full		Auto
100M-Full	Colort a fixed around and durlay mode if the connected	
100M-Half	Select a fixed speed and duplex mode if the connected Ethernet device has trouble auto-negotiating the line speed.	
10M-Full	chemet device has trouble auto-negotiating the line speed.	
10M-Half		

#### Flow Control

The Flow Control setting allows you to enable or disable the flow control feature for the port when the port's Speed is set to Auto. Flow control helps manage the data transfer rate between the router and the connected Ethernet device.

Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable flow control for this port when the port's Speed is set to Auto.	Disabled				
MDI/MDIX	MDI/MDIX					
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Auto	Allow the port to auto-detect the port type of the connected Ethernet device and change the port type accordingly.	Auto				
MDI	Choose MDI or MDIX if the connected Ethernet device has	Auto				
MDIX	trouble auto-negotiating the port type.					

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### Status

The Status page shows the current status of the Ethernet ports including the port transmission speed, flow control, and port type (MDI or MDIX).

#### **Port Settings**

Settir	ng	Status					
Э							Q Search
Port	Status	Media Type	Link Status	Description	Flow Control	MDI/MDIX	Port State
1/1	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45			-	-	
1/2	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	100M-Full		Off	MDI	Forwarding

# Layer 2 Switching

From the Layer 2 Switching section, the following functions can be configured: VLAN, MAC Address Table, and Multicast.

Layer 2 Switching	^
VLAN	
MAC Address Table	
Multicast	~

## VLAN

## **Using Virtual LAN**

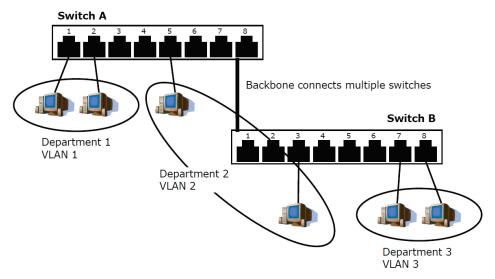
Setting up Virtual LANs (VLANs) on your Moxa industrial secure router increases the efficiency of your network by dividing the LAN into logical segments, as opposed to physical segments. In general, VLANs are easier to manage.

## The VLAN Concept

#### What is a VLAN?

A VLAN is a group of devices that can be located anywhere on a network, but which communicate as if they are on the same physical segment. With VLANs, you can segment your network without being restricted by physical connections—a limitation of traditional network design. With VLANs you can segment your network into:

- **Departmental groups**—you could have one VLAN for the marketing department, another for the finance department, and another for the product development department.
- **Hierarchical groups**—you could have one VLAN for directors, another for managers, and another for general staff.
- **Usage groups**—you could have one VLAN for email users and another for multimedia users.



#### **Benefits of VLANs**

The main benefit of VLANs is that they provide a network segmentation system that is far more flexible than traditional networks. Using VLANs also provides you with three other benefits:

• VLANs ease the relocation of devices on networks: With traditional networks, network administrators spend much of their time dealing with moves and changes. If users move to a different

sub-network, the addresses of each host must be updated manually. With a VLAN setup, if a host originally on VLAN Marketing, for example, is moved to a port on another part of the network, and retains its original subnet membership, you only need to specify that the new port is on VLAN Marketing. You do not need to do any re-cabling.

- VLANs provide extra security: Devices within each VLAN can only communicate with other devices on the same VLAN. If a device on VLAN Marketing needs to communicate with devices on VLAN Finance, the traffic must pass through a routing device or Layer 3 switch.
- VLANs help control traffic: With traditional networks, congestion can be caused by broadcast traffic that is directed to all network devices, regardless of whether or not they need it. VLANs increase the efficiency of your network because each VLAN can be set up to contain only those devices that need to communicate with each other.

#### VLANs and the Moxa switch

- Your Moxa switch includes support for VLANs using IEEE Std 802.1Q-2005. This standard allows traffic from multiple VLANs to be carried across one physical link. The IEEE Std 802.1Q-2005 standard allows each port on your Moxa switch to be placed as follows:
- On a single VLAN defined in the switch
- On several VLANs simultaneously using 802.1Q tagging
- The standard requires that you define the 802.1Q VLAN ID for each VLAN on your Moxa switch before the switch can use it to forward traffic:

#### Managing a VLAN

A new or initialized Moxa industrial secure router contains a single VLAN—the Default VLAN. This VLAN has the following definition:

- Management VLAN ID 1 can be changed
- 802.1Q VLAN default ID 1 cannot be deleted

All of the ports are initially placed on this VLAN, and it is the only VLAN that allows you to access the management software of the Moxa switch over the network.

#### **Communication Between VLANs**

If devices connected to a VLAN need to communicate with devices on a different VLAN, a router or Layer 3 switching device with connections to both VLANs need to be installed. Communication between VLANs can only take place if they are all connected to a routing or Layer 3 switching device.

### VLANs: Tagged and Untagged Membership

Moxa's switch supports 802.1Q VLAN tagging, a system that allows traffic for multiple VLANs to be carried on a single physical link (backbone, trunk). When setting up VLANs you need to understand when to use untagged or tagged membership of VLANs. Simply put, if a port is on a single VLAN it can be an untagged member, but if the port needs to be a member of multiple VLANs, a tagged membership must be defined.

A typical host (e.g., clients) will be an untagged member of one VLAN, defined as an **Access Port** in a Moxa switch, while an inter-switch connection will be a tagged member of all VLANs, defined as a **Trunk Port** in a Moxa switch.

The IEEE Std 802.1Q-2005 defines how VLANs operate within an open packet-switched network. An 802.1Q compliant packet carries additional information that allows a switch to determine which VLAN the port belongs to. If a frame is carrying the additional information, it is known as a tagged frame.

To carry multiple VLANs across a single physical link (backbone, trunk), each packet must be tagged with a VLAN identifier so that the switches can identify which packets belong to which VLAN. To communicate between VLANs, a router must be used.

Moxa's switch supports three types of VLAN port settings:

- Access Port: The port connects to a single device that is not tagged. The user must define the default port PVID that assigns which VLAN the device belongs to. Once the ingress packet of this Access Port egresses to another Trunk Port (the port needs all packets to carry tag information), the switch will insert this PVID into this packet so the next 802.1Q VLAN switch can recognize it.
- **Trunk Port:** The port connects to a LAN that consists of untagged devices and tagged devices. In general, the traffic of the Trunk Port must have a Tag. Users can also assign a PVID to a Trunk Port. The untagged packet on the Trunk Port will be assigned the default port PVID as its VID.

• **Hybrid Port:** The port is similar to a Trunk port, except users can explicitly assign tags to be removed from egress packets.

### Global

From the **Global** tab, you can configure management VLAN and port settings.

LAN		
Global	Settings	Status
Management VLAN		
Management VLAN		
1	Ŧ	
Management Port Q	uick Settings	

#### Management VLAN

 Description
 Factory Default

 1 to 16
 Select the management VLAN ID from the drop-down menu.
 1

#### **Management Port Quick Settings**

Use this for quick and easy configuration of VLAN settings for multiple ports at once.

#### Management Port

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select the management port of this Moxa Industrial Secure	
	Router for quick and easy configuration of VLAN settings for	
1 to 2	multiple ports at once. Set the Mode, PVID, Tagged VLAN ID,	None
	and Untagged VLAN ID and click APPLY button to create the	
	VLAN ID configuration table.	

## VLAN

Global	Settings	Status		
anagement VLAN	I.			
inagement VLAN				
Nanagement Port	Quick Settings			
Nanagement Port	Quick Settings		Untagged VLAN	

### Mode

Setting	Description	<b>Factory Default</b>
Access	Define the port as an Access port. This is used when	
ALLESS	connecting to single devices without tags.	
	Define the port as a Trunk port. This is used when connecting	
	to another 802.1Q VLAN aware the Industrial Secure Router.	Access
	Define the port as a Hybrid port. This is used when connecting	Access
Hybrid	tp another Access 802.1Q VLAN aware Industrial Secure	
Hybrid	Router or another LAN that combines tagged and/or untagged	
	devices and/or other routers/hubs.	

### PVID

Setting Description		Factory Default
1 to 16	Set the default VLAN ID for untagged devices that connect to	1
1 10 10	the port.	T

### Tagged VLAN

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All Member VIDs 1 to	, ,	Access mode: None Trunk or Hybrid mode: 1

### Untagged VLAN

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All Member VIDs, 1 to 16	for tagged devices that connect to the port and tags that need to be removed in egress packets. Use commas to separate	Access mode: 1 Trunk or Hybrid mode: None

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{APPLY}}$  to save your changes.

## Settings

<b>VLAN</b>					
Glo	bal	Settings		Status	
٥					
	VLAN	Member Pe	ort		
	1	1, 2			
Max. 16					
c					
C					
	Port	Mode	PVID	Untagged VLAN	Tagged VLAN
1	1	Access	1	1,	
1	2	Access	1	1,	

### **Create a VLAN**

Click the 🖿 icon to create a VLAN.

Create VLAN			
VID *	•		
Max 16 VLANs			
		CANCEL	CREATE

### VID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
VLAN ID, max. 16 VLANs	Specify the VLAN ID. You can create multiple VLANs at once by entering single VLAN IDs or a range of IDs. For example, 2, 4-8, 10-13.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the VLAN.

### Delete a VLAN

Select the VLAN you want to delete from the list and click the  $\ensuremath{\overline{1}}$  icon.

/LAN					
Gl	obal	Settings	Status		
ĩ				<b>Q</b> Search	
	VLAN	Member Port			
	1	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10			
	2				
	3				
Max. 1	6				1 – 3 of 3

### Click **DELETE** to delete the selected items.

Delete VLAN		
Are you sure you want to delete the selected VLAN?	,	
C/	ANCEL	DELETE

## **Modify the Port Settings**

Click  $\checkmark$  to modify the settings of the corresponding VLAN entry.

Mode		
Access	-	
PVID		
1	*	
Tagged VLAN	*	
Untagged VLAN		

### Mode

Setting	etting Description			
Access	connecting to single devices without tags.			
Trunk	Define the port as a Trunk port. This is used when connecting to another 802.1Q VLAN aware the Industrial Secure Router.	A		
Hybrid	Define the port as a Hybrid port. This is used when connecting to another Access 802.1Q VLAN aware Industrial Secure Router or another LAN that combines tagged and/or untagged devices and/or other routers/hubs.	Access		

### PVID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 16	Set the default VLAN ID for untagged devices that connect to	1
1 to 16	the port.	T

### Tagged VLAN

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All Member VIDs, 1 to 16	If the Mode is set to Trunk or Hybrid, set the other VLAN ID for tagged devices that connect to the port. Use commas to separate different VIDs.	Access mode: None Trunk or Hybrid mode: 1
Untagged VLAN		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All Member VIDs, 1 to	for tanged devices that connect to the nort and tags that need	Access mode: 1 Trunk or Hybrid mode: None

When finished, click the **APPLY** button to save your changes.

### Status

From the **Status** tab, you can review created VLAN groups, joined access ports, trunk ports, and hybrid ports. Click the  $\bf{C}$  icon to refresh the information in the VLAN Status Table.

Global	Settings	Status	
;			Q Search
VLAN Hybr	id Port	Trunk Port	Access Port
1			1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

## **MAC Address Table**

The MAC Address Table shows the MAC address of devices that go through the Moxa industrial secure router. The Aging Time (10 to 300 seconds) is the duration that a MAC address entry can remain in the Moxa router's MAC Address Table before it is removed. Once a MAC address is removed, the Industrial Secure Router will no longer forward frames originating from this MAC address.

To modify the Aging Time, specify the duration (in seconds) and click **Apply**.

s	ec.								
					Q Search				
VLAN ID	MAC Address	Туре	Port						
1	b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85	Learnt Unicast	7						
1	b4:2e:99:96:56:06	Learnt Unicast	7						
1	cc:32:e5:d6:a9:ec	Learnt Unicast	7						
1	d8:5e:d3:2b:28:1d	Learnt Unicast	7						
	<b>VLAN ID</b> 1 1 1	1         b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85           1         b4:2e:99:96:56:06           1         cc:32:e5:d6:a9:ec	VLAN IDMAC AddressType1b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85Learnt Unicast1b4:2e:99:96:56:06Learnt Unicast1cc:32:e5:d6:a9:ecLearnt Unicast	VLAN IDMAC AddressTypePort1b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85Learnt Unicast71b4:2e:99:96:56:06Learnt Unicast71cc:32:e5:d6:a9:ecLearnt Unicast7	VLAN IDMAC AddressTypePort1b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85Learnt Unicast71b4:2e:99:96:56:06Learnt Unicast71c:32:e5:d6:a9:ecLearnt Unicast7	VLAN ID       MAC Address       Type       Port         1       b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85       Learnt Unicast       7         1       b4:2e:99:96:56:06       Learnt Unicast       7         1       c:32:e5:d6:a9:ec       Learnt Unicast       7	VLAN ID       MAC Address       Type       Port         1       b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85       Learnt Unicast       7         1       b4:2e:99:96:56:06       Learnt Unicast       7         1       c:32:e5:d6:a9:ec       Learnt Unicast       7	VLAN ID       MAC Address       Type       Port         1       b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85       Learnt Unicast       7         1       b4:2e:99:96:56:06       Learnt Unicast       7         1       c:32:e5:d6:a9:ec       Learnt Unicast       7	VLAN ID       MAC Address       Type       Port         1       b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85       Learnt Unicast       7         1       b4:2e:99:96:56:06       Learnt Unicast       7         1       c:32:e5:d6:a9:ec       Learnt Unicast       7

You can quickly filter MAC addresses by entering one of the following criteria into the Search field.

Learnt Unicast	Show all learnt Unicast MAC addresses.
Static	Show all Static, Static Lock, and Static Multicast MAC addresses.
Multicast	Show all Static Multicast MAC addresses.
Port x	Show all MAC addresses associated with a specific port.

The table displays the following information:

VLAN ID	This field shows the VLAN ID.
MAC Address	This field shows the MAC address.
Туре	This field shows the type of this MAC address.
Port	This field shows the port that this MAC address belongs to.

## Multicast

Multicast filtering improves the performance of networks that carry multicast traffic. This section covers the Static Multicast Table page and explains how multicast filtering can be implemented on your Moxa industrial secure router.



## **The Concept of Multicast Filtering**

### What is an IP Multicast?

A *multicast* is a packet sent by one host to multiple hosts. Only those hosts that belong to a specific multicast group will receive the multicast. If the network is set up correctly, a multicast can only be sent to an end-station or a subset of end-stations on a LAN or VLAN that belong to the multicast group. Multicast group members can be distributed across multiple subnets, so that multicast transmissions can occur within a campus LAN or over a WAN. In addition, networks that support IP multicast send only *one* copy of the desired information across the network until the delivery path that reaches group members diverges. To make more efficient use of network bandwidth, it is only at these points that multicast packets are duplicated and forwarded. A multicast packet has a multicast group address in the destination address field of the packet's IP header.

### **Benefits of Multicast**

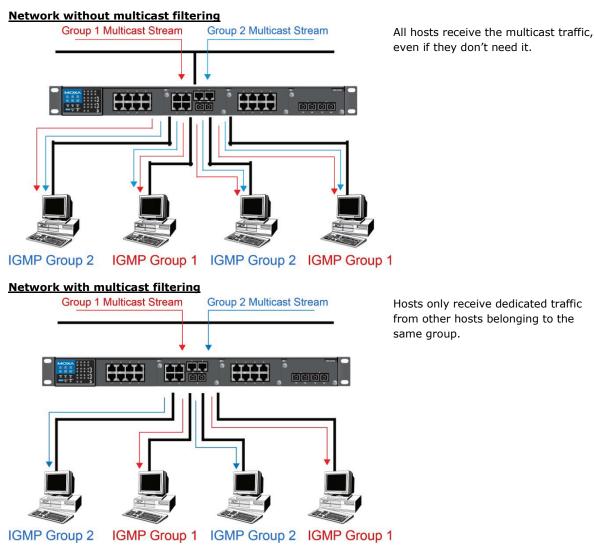
The benefits of using IP multicast are:

- It uses the most efficient, sensible method to deliver the same information to many receivers with only one transmission.
- It reduces the load on the source (for example, a server) since it will not need to produce several copies of the same data.
- It makes efficient use of network bandwidth and scales well as the number of multicast group members increases.
- Works with other IP protocols and services, such as Quality of Service (QoS).

Multicast transmission makes more sense and is more efficient than unicast transmission for some applications. For example, multicasts are often used for video-conferencing, since high volumes of traffic must be sent to several end-stations at the same time, but where broadcasting the traffic to all end-stations would cause a substantial reduction in network performance. Furthermore, several industrial automation protocols, such as Allen-Bradley, EtherNet/IP, Siemens Profibus, and Foundation Fieldbus HSE (High Speed Ethernet), use multicast. These industrial Ethernet protocols use publisher/subscriber communications models by multicasting packets that could flood a network with heavy traffic.

### **Multicast Filtering**

Multicast filtering ensures that only end-stations that have joined certain groups receive multicast traffic. With multicast filtering, network devices only forward multicast traffic to the ports that are connected to registered end-stations. The following two figures illustrate how a network behaves without multicast filtering, and with multicast filtering.



## Multicast Filtering and Moxa's Industrial Secure Routers

The Moxa industrial secure router has two ways to achieve multicast filtering: IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) Snooping and adding a static multicast MAC manually to filter multicast traffic automatically.

### Snooping Mode

Snooping Mode allows your industrial secure router to forward multicast packets only to the appropriate ports. The router **snoops** on exchanges between hosts and an IGMP device to find those ports that want to join a multicast group, and then configures its filters accordingly.

### Query Mode

Query Mode allows the Moxa router to work as the Querier if it has the lowest IP address on the subnetwork to which it belongs.

IGMP querying is enabled by default on the Moxa router to ensure proceeding query election. Enable query mode to run multicast sessions on a network that does not contain IGMP routers (or queriers). Query mode allows users to enable IGMP Snooping by VLAN ID. The Moxa industrial secure router supports IGMP Snooping Version 1, Version 2, and Version 3. Version 2 is compatible with version 1. The default setting is IGMP V1/V2.

### **IGMP Multicast Filtering**

IGMP is used by IP-supporting network devices to register hosts with multicast groups. It can be used on all LANs and VLANs that contain a multicast-capable IP router, and on other network devices that support multicast filtering. Moxa switches support IGMP Version 1, 2, and 3. IGMP Version 1 and 2 work as follows:

- The IP router (or querier) periodically sends query packets to all end-stations on the LANs or VLANs that are connected to it. For networks with more than one IP router, the router with the lowest IP address is the querier. A switch with an IP address lower than the IP address of any other IGMP queriers connected to the LAN or VLAN can become the IGMP querier.
- When an IP host receives a query packet, it sends a report packet back that identifies the multicast group that the end-station would like to join.
- When the report packet arrives at a port on a switch with IGMP Snooping enabled, the switch knows
  that the port should forward traffic for the multicast group, and then proceeds to forward the packet to
  the router.
- When the router receives the report packet, it registers that the LAN or VLAN requires traffic for the multicast groups.
- When the router forwards traffic for the multicast group to the LAN or VLAN, the switches only forward the traffic to ports that received a report packet.

IGMP Version 3 supports "source filtering," which allows the system to define how to treat packets from specified source addresses. The system can either allow-list or deny-list specified sources.

<b>IGMP Version</b>	Main Features	Reference
V1	a. Periodic query	RFC-1112
V2	<ul> <li>Compatible with V1 and adds:</li> <li>a. Group-specific query</li> <li>b. Leave group messages</li> <li>c. Resends specific queries to verify leave message was the last one in the group</li> <li>d. Querier election</li> </ul>	RFC-2236
V3	<ul> <li>Compatible with V1, V2 and adds:</li> <li>a. Source filtering</li> <li>Accept multicast traffic from a specified source</li> <li>Accept multicast traffic from any source except the specified source</li> </ul>	RFC-3376

### IGMP version comparison

### Static Multicast MAC

Some devices may support multicast packets, but not support IGMP Snooping. The Moxa industrial secure router supports adding multicast groups manually to enable multicast filtering.

### **Enabling Multicast Filtering**

Use the USB console or web interface to enable or disable IGMP Snooping and IGMP querying. If IGMP Snooping is not enabled, then IP multicast traffic is always forwarded, flooding the network.

## **Static Multicast Table**

From the Static Multicast Table, you can create static multicast entries.

Static Multicast Table	
0	Q Search
MAC Address Port	
Max. 128	Items per page: $50 - 0$ of $0   < > > $



### NOTE

01:00:5E:XX:XX:XX on this page is the IP multicast MAC address. Activate IGMP Snooping for automatic classification.

Click the 🖬 icon to create a new static multicast entry.

Create Static I	Multicast		
MAC Address *			
Port *	¥		
		CANC	CREATE

### MAC Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Integer	Enter the Static Multicast MAC address.	None
Port		

Port	
Sotting	

FUIL		
		Factory Default
1/1, 1/2, 1/3, 1/4, 1/5, 1/6, 1/7, 1/8, 1/9, 1/10 checkbox	Check the boxes to add the corresponding ports to the static multicast group.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the static multicast entry.

# **Network Interface**

## LAN

LAN		WAN	Bridge	Secondary IP		
٥					<b>Q</b> Search	
	Name	Status	VLAN ID Alias	IP Address	Netmask	Virtual MAC
□ /	LAN	Enabled	1	192.168.127.254	255.255.255.0	-

### Create a LAN Interface

Click the 🛨 icon to create a LAN interface.

Name *			
	0/12		
VLAN Interface *			
Enabled			
VLAN ID *	*		
1 - 4093			
Alias			
	0/31		
Directed Broadcast *		Source IP Overwrite	
Disabled	*	Disabled	-
		Netmask *	
IP Address *		24 (255.255.255.0)	•
Virtual MAC			
00:00:00:00:00:00:00			

Configure the following settings:

Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 12 characters	Enter a name for the interface.	None
VLAN Interface		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the VLAN interface.	Enabled
VLAN ID		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 4093	Enter the VLAN ID.	None
Alias		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter an alias for the VLAN interface.	None
Directed Broadcast		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable directed broadcasting.	Disabled
Source IP Overwrite		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable source IP overwriting.	Disabled
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the IP address of the interface.	None
Netmask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet mask	Specify the subnet mask of the interface.	24 (255.255.255.0

Virtual MAC					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Virtual MAC	Enter the virtual MAC address of the interface.	00:00:00:00:00:00			

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the new interface.



# NOTE

You can create up to 16 LAN interfaces by configuring each port with unique VLAN ID numbers.

### **Delete a LAN Interface**

Select the item(s) you want to delete in the LAN Interface List, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon. When prompted to confirm, click **DELETE** to delete the selected item(s).

### Modify a LAN Interface

In the LAN Interface List, click the  $\checkmark$  icon of the entry you want to modify. When finished editing the attributes, click **APPLY** to save and apply your changes.

## WAN



### NOTE

This section is for Ethernet WAN settings only and does not cover cellular WAN. For cellular WAN settings, refer to <u>Cellular</u>.

etwork Int	erfac	es		
LAN		WAN	Bridge	Secondary IP
VLAN ID				
VLAN ID	•			
Connection				
Status		Connection Type		

### VLAN ID

### VLAN ID

The Moxa Industrial Secure Router's WAN interface is configured by VLAN group. Ports with the same VLAN ID can be configured as one WAN interface.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
VLAN ID	Select a VLAN ID. The Moxa Industrial Secure Router's WAN interface is VLAN-based. All ports associated with the selected VLAN ID will act as a single WAN interface.	None

### Connection

There are three different connection types for the WAN interface: **Dynamic IP**, **Static IP**, and **PPPoE**. A detailed explanation of the configuration settings for each type is given below.

Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the WAN interface.	Enabled
Connection Type		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Static IP, Dynamic IP, PPPoE	Choose the connection type. For more details and configuration settings for each type, refer to: <u>Dynamic IP Connection</u> <u>Static IP Connection</u> <u>PPPoE Connection</u> .	Dynamic IP

## **Dynamic IP Connection**

LAN		WAN	Brid	dge	Secondary IP
VLAN ID					
VLAN ID					
	•				
Connection					
Status		Connection Type			
Enabled	*	Dynamic IP	-		
Ellableu		Dynamic IP			
Directed Broadcat					
Enabled					
Disabled	*				
Source IP Overwrite					
Disabled	-				
PPTP Dialup <sub>Status</sub> Disabled	Ŧ				
IP Address					
0.0.0.0		Username			
MPPE Encryption			0/30		0/30
None	*				
Virtual MAC					
Virtual MAC					
00:00:00:00:00:00					
DNS Settings					
		Secondary DNS Server		Tertiary DNS	Server
Primary DNS Server					

### **Directed Broadcast**

Status					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the directed broadcasting.	Enabled			
Source IP Overwrite					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable source IP overwriting.	Enabled			

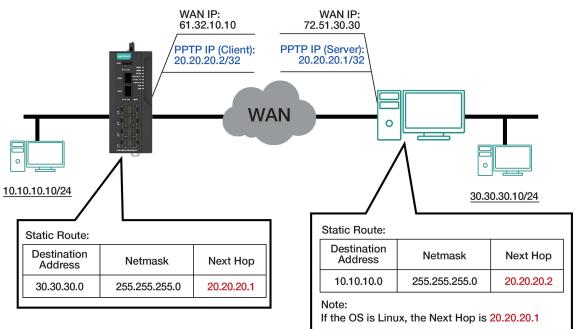
### **PPTP** Dialup

The Point-to-Point Tunneling (PTP) protocol is used for Virtual Private Networks (VPN). Remote users can use PPTP to connect to private networks from public networks.

PPTP Connection		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the PPTP connection.	None
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the PPTP service IP address.	0.0.0.0
Username		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the username used for dialing in to the PPTP service.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the password used for dialing in to the PPTP service.	None
MPPE Encryption		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
None/Encrypt	Enable or disable MPPE encryption.	None

### Example

In this scenario, a remote user (IP: 10.10.10.10) wants to connect to the internal server (private IP: 30.30.30.10) via the PPTP protocol. The IP address of the PPTP server is 20.20.20.1. The necessary configuration settings are shown in the following figure:



### Virtual MAC

### Virtual MAC

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Virtual MAC Address	Specify the virtual MAC address.	00.00.00.00.00.00

### **DNS Settings**

When using Dynamic IP or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure optional DNS servers.

Primary DNS Server		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the primary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0

Secondary DNS	Server	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the secondary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0

### Tertiary DNS Server

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the tertiary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

•		

## NOTE

Manually configured DNS servers will have a higher priority than DNS servers from the PPPoE or DHCP server.

## **Static IP Connection**

LAN	WAN	Brid	lge	Secondary IP
VLAN ID				
VLAN ID				
	*			
Connection				
Status	Connection Type			
Enabled	Static IP			
Directed Broadcat				
Enabled				
Disabled	*			
Source IP Overwrite				
Disabled	The second secon			
Address Information	on		Gateway	
Address Information		•	Gateway 0.0.0.0	
Address Information	on	×		
Address Information IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status	on			
Address Information IP Address 0.0.0.0	on	×		
Address Information IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled	on Netmask *	×	0.0.0.0	
Address Information P Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address	on Netmask *		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Information P Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address	on Netmask *	0/30	0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Information IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled	on Netmask *		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Information IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0	on Netmask *		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Information P Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None	on Netmask *		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Information IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None Virtual MAC	on Netmask *		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Information P Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None Virtual MAC	on Netmask *		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Information P Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None Virtual MAC Virtual MAC	on Netmask *		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Information P Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None Virtual MAC Virtual MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00 DNS Settings	on Netmask *		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Information P Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None Virtual MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00	on Netmask *		0.0.0.0 Password	0/30

### **Directed Broadcast**

### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the directed broadcasting.	Enabled

Source IP Overwrite		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable source IP overwriting.	Enabled

### **Address Information**

IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the interface IP address.	0.0.0.0
Netmask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the netmask.	None
Gateway		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the gateway IP address.	0.0.0.0

### **PPTP Dialup**

The Point-to-Point Tunneling (PTP) protocol is used for Virtual Private Networks (VPN). Remote users can use PPTP to connect to private networks from public networks.

PPTP Connection		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the PPTP connection.	None
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the PPTP service IP address.	0.0.0.0
Username		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the username used for dialing in to the PPTP service.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the password used for dialing in to the PPTP service.	None
MPPE Encryption		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
None/Encrypt	Enable or disable MPPE encryption.	None

### Virtual MAC

Virtual MAC	Virtual MAC			
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Virtual MAC Address	Specify the virtual MAC address.	00.00.00.00.00.00		

### **DNS Settings**

When using Dynamic IP or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure optional DNS servers.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the primary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS		
Secondary DNS Setting	Server Description	Factory Default

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the tertiary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{APPLY}}$  to save your changes.



### NOTE

Manually configured DNS servers will have a higher priority than DNS servers from the PPPoE or DHCP server.

## **PPPoE Connection**

LAN	WAN	Bridge		Secondary IP
VLAN ID				
VLAN ID				
	•			
Connection				
Status	Connection Type			
Enabled	<ul> <li>PPPoE</li> </ul>	-		
Directed Broadcat				
Enabled				
Disabled	•			
Source IP Overwrite				
Disabled				
PPPoE Dialup				
Username *	Password *		Host Name	
0/		0 / 30		0 / 30
Virtual MAC				
Virtual MAC				
00:00:00:00:00				
DNS Settings				
Primary DNS Server	Secondary DNS Server		Tertiary DNS Serv	ver
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0		0.0.0.0	

### **Directed Broadcast**

Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the directed broadcasting.	Enabled
Source IP Overwrite	·	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable source IP overwriting.	Enabled

### **PPPoE Dialup**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the username used for logging in to the PPPoE server.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the password used for logging in to the PPPoE server.	None
Host Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the user-defined hostname of the PPPoE server.	None
Virtual MAC <i>Virtual MAC</i>		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Virtual MAC Address	Specify the virtual MAC address.	00.00.00.00.00
VII tuur PIAC Auur C33	1 ,	
DNS Settings	IP or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure optic	nal DNS servers.
DNS Settings When using Dynamic	IP or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure optic	
DNS Settings	IP or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure optic	nal DNS servers.
DNS Settings When using Dynamic Primary DNS Server Setting	IP or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure optic	
DNS Settings When using Dynamic Primary DNS Server	IP or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure option Description Enter the primary DNS IP address.	Factory Default
DNS Settings When using Dynamic Primary DNS Server Setting IP Address	IP or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure option Description Enter the primary DNS IP address.	Factory Default

SettingDescriptionFactory DefaultIP AddressEnter the tertiary DNS IP address.0.0.0.0

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## NOTE

Manually configured DNS servers will have a higher priority than DNS servers from the PPPoE or DHCP server.

## **Bridge Group Interface**

When ports are set in the VLAN, the packets transmitted within these ports will be forwarded by the switching chip without being filtered by the firewall. However, in some scenarios, it is required to filter specific packets transmitted within the VLAN. By selecting ports as Bridge port, the packets transmitted between these ports will be checked by the firewall.

Similarly, when ports are associated with different VLANs, the packets transmitted within these VLANs will be routed by the switching chip locally, without being inspected by the firewall. However, in some scenarios, it is required to filter specific packets transmitted between VLANs. By adding VLANs to a Bridge Zone, the packets transmitted between these two zones will be checked by the firewall.

## Adding Ports/VLANs to the Bridge Interface

### Port Base

Port-based bridge ports allow the router firewall to filter traffic moving between the assigned bridge ports. Select **Port-Base** as the Bridge type to create a port-based bridge.

LAN	WAN	Bridge	Secondary IP
Bridge IP Configurat	ion		
Bridge Type			
Port-Base	) Zone-Base		
Name *			
BRG_LAN			
7,	/ 12		
Status *			
Disabled	• 		
Soose Message Pass-Through			
Disabled	*		
P Address *	Subnet Mask *		
192.168.126.254	24 (255.255.255.0)	*	
Pridge Member			
Bridge Member	*		

### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default						
Max. 12 characters	None							
Status								
Setting	Description	Factory Default						
Enabled or Disabled	Disabled							
Goose Message Pass	Goose Message Pass-Through							
Setting	Description	Factory Default						
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable GOOSE message passthrough.	Disabled						

 IP Address

 Setting
 Description
 Factory Default

 IP Address
 Enter the IP address of the interface.
 None

 Subnet Mask
 Setting
 Description
 Factory Default

 Subnet Mask
 Enter the subnet mask of the interface.
 None

### Bridge Member

Setting	Description	Factory Default						
Port	Select the port that will act as the bridge port.	None						

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Zone base

A zone-based bridge allows the router firewall to filter traffic moving between all ports associated with the bridge zone.

Select **Zone-Base** as the Bridge type to create a zone-based bridge.

letwork Inte	erfaces		
LAN	WAN	Bridge	Secondary IP
Bridge IP Configu	Iration		
Bridge Type			
O Port-Base	Zone-Base		
Name * ZONE_BRG			
	8 / 12		
Status *			
Enabled	*		
Goose Message Pass-Thr	ough		
Disabled	*		
IP Address *	Subnet Mask *		
0.0.0.0	0 (0.0.0.0)	*	
Zone 1			
Name	Bridge Member		
Name	0/12		
Zone 2			
Name	Bridge Member	n Iv	
	0/12		
APPLY			

### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 12 characters	Enter a name for the bridge zone interface.	None
Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the bridge zone interface.	Disabled
Goose Message Pass	s-Through	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable GOOSE message passthrough.	Disabled
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the interface.	None
Subnet Mask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the interface.	None

### Zone 1/2

Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 12 characters	Enter a name for the bridge zone.	None
Bridge Member		
Setting	Description	Factory Default

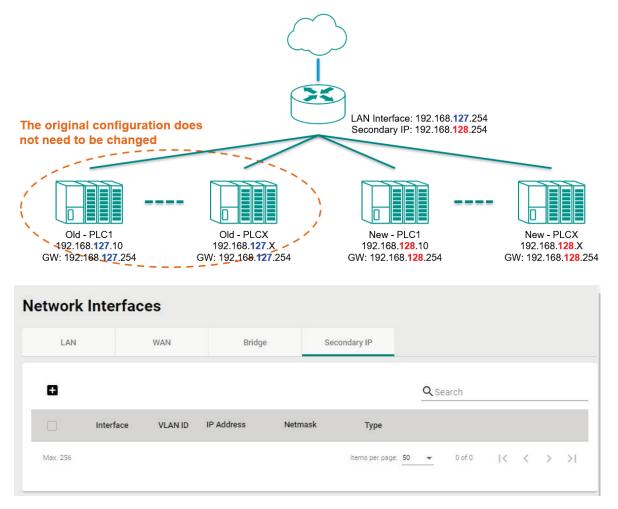
When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## NOTE

Even when the Bridge IP function is disabled (e.g. the bridge interface is disabled), the bridge interface will still exist in the system. Even if no ports are assigned to it, you can view the VLAN ID of the bridge interface in the VLAN table. To fully remove or disable the bridge interface, modify the PVID in the VLAN settings.

## **Secondary IP**

The Layer 3 interface can also act as a secondary IP. As shown in the example below, if the user needs additional IP addresses in the LAN segment but does not want to change the settings of the original interface IP/device, the secondary IP can be used to create a new network segment.



### Create a Secondary IP

Click 
to create a secondary IP.

Create Secon	dary IP	Entry		
Interface *	*			
IP Address *		Netmask *	•	
			CANCEL	CREATE

Configure the following settings:

Interface		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Interface	Select the interface to create a secondary IP for.	None
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary interface.	None
Netmask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask of the secondary interface.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to activate the secondary interface.

### **Delete a Secondary IP**

Select the interface from the Secondary IP List and click  $\widehat{\blacksquare}$  to delete it.

La	yer 3	Interfac	es										
	LAN		WAN	Seconda	ry IP								
	•					<b>Q</b> Searc	ch						
		Interface	VLAN ID	IP Address	Netmask		Туре						
		LAN	1	192.168.127.11	255.255.25	55.240	Manual						
	Max 256					Iten	ns per page: 50	•	1 – 1 of 1	<	<	>	>

### Modify a Secondary IP

Click 🖍 to modify the secondary IP entry. When finished, click **APPLY** to save and apply your changes.

From the **Redundancy** section, you can configure the **Layer 2 Redundancy**, **Layer 3 Redundancy Layer**, and **WAN Redundancy** settings.



# Layer 3 Redundancy

From the Layer 3 Redundancy section you can configure VRRP Settings.

Layer 3 Redundancy	^
VRRP	

## VRRP

**Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)** helps solve some problems with static configurations. VRRP enables a group of routers to form a single virtual router with a virtual IP address. The LAN clients can then be configured with the virtual router's virtual IP address as their default gateway. This virtual router consisting of a group of routers is also known as a VRRP group.

## Settings

Settings			Status									
RRP												
isabled		*										
ersion												
ersion 3		Ŧ										
APPLY												
٠									Q Searcl	ı		
											88-5 5.500	1000 - 100000
	Enable	Index	Interface	IP Address	VIP	VRID	Prio.	Adv int(ms)	Preemption	Accept	Tracking Interface	Tracking Ping
Max. 16												0 of 0
Max. TO												

VRRP		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable VRRP functionality.	Disabled
Version		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Version 2, Version 3	Select the VRRP version.	Version 3

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Create a Virtual Router**

Click the **•** icon to create a new virtual router.

Create Virtual Route	r				
VRRP Interface Setting	Entry				
Enable					
Disabled -					
Interface					
LAN -					
	Virtual Router ID *		Priority. *		
Virtual IP *	1		100		
	1 - 255		1 - 254		
Accept Mode	1-200		1-204		
Enabled -					
Preemption	Preempt Delay *				
Enabled -	120				
	10 - 300	sec.			
Advertisement Interval *	10-300	360.			
100					
10 - 30000 millisec.					
VRRP Tracking					
Native Interface Tracking					
Disabled	-				
Object Ping Tracking					
Target IP					
Leave empty or 0.0.0.0 to disable Interval *	Timeout *				
1	3				
1 - 100 sec.	1 - 100	sec.			
Success Count *	Failure Count *	360.			
3	3				
1 - 100	1 - 100				
10100	1.100				
				CANCEL	CREATE
				UNITOLL	CILLATE

## VRRP Interface Setting Entry

Enable		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the virtual router	Disabled

o		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
_AN, WAN	Select the interface to enable VRRP for, either the LAN or WAN interface.	LAN
Virtual IP		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the virtual router IP address. The virtual IP must be	
IP Address	the same subnet as the real IP address.	None
II Address	Industrial secure routers in the same VRRP group must be in	None
	the same subnet.	
/irtual Router ID		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the virtual router ID, which is used to assign the	
1 to 255	router to a VRRP group. The Industrial secure routers that	1
1 (0 255	operate as master/backup should have the same ID. Each	1
	interface supports one virtual router ID.	
Priority		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the VRRP interface priority. A higher number	
1 40 254	represents a higher priority, with 254 being the highest. If	100
1 to 254	multiple industrial secure routers have the same priority, the	100
	router with the highest IP address will have priority.	
Accept Mode	·	·
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Enable or disable Accept Mode. When enabled, the virtual	
Enabled or Disabled	router with the role of Master will allow others to access its	Enabled
	own virtual IP address.	
Preemption		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Enable or disable preemption. If enabled, preemption will	
Enabled or Disabled	decide if the master will retake authority or not after being	Enabled
	unavailable.	Lindbied
Dreamat Dalar		1
Preempt Delay	Description	Fosterry Defeult
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	If Preemption is enabled, specify the preemption delay. If	
10 to 300 seconds	enabled, the master will wait for the specified period of time	120
	before retaking authority back in order to prevent the master	
	from acting before the network connection is ready.	
Advertisement Inter		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the advertisement interval. This determines the	
10 to 30000 seconds	interval (in seconds) at which the master will send packets to	100
	all slave device to inform them who the master device is.	
VRRP Tracking		
– Native Interface Tra	cking	
tutive miteriace ma		
Setting	Description	Factory Default

## NOTE

Make sure the WAN IP is configured correctly before enabling the "Native Interface Tracking" function.

### **Object Ping Tracking**

Target	IP
rarget	<b>.</b> .

Target IP		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the Target IP to verify if the connection to the	
IP Address	destination (e.g. control center) is working. Leave this blank	None
	or enter 0.0.0.0 to disable this function.	
Interval		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 100 seconds	Specify the interval at which the router will ping the target.	1
Timeout		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 100	Specify the timeout duration. This indicates the time the	3
1 (0 100	router will wait for a response before timing out.	5
Success Count		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Specify the success count. This indicates how many responses	3
	the router must receive to consider the connection working.	5
Failure Count		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the failure count. This indicates how many times the	
Enabled or Disabled	target can fail to respond before the router considers the	3

When finished, click **CREATE** to save and apply your configuration.

connection not working.

### **VRRP Status**

The Status screen shows a table with the current VRRP settings status.

VRRP							
Settings	Status						
G						Q Search	
Enable	Index	Interface	VRID	Status	Master Addi	ress	
Max. 16							0 to 0

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the information.

# **WAN Redundancy**

The WAN Redundancy feature provides failover between different WAN interfaces. When the device is in WAN Backup mode, only one WAN interface connects to the internet. If the Internet connection on the active WAN interface becomes unavailable, the system will automatically switch to the other WAN interface to recover the connection.

## Settings

From the Settings screen, you can configure the redundancy mode, switching mode, and connection health ping settings.

## WAN Redundancy

Settings		Status			
WAN Redundancy Mode *					
Backup	•				
WAN Switching Mode *					
Failback	•				
Ping Interval *		Ping Failure Retry Times *		Ping Success Retry Time	s *
5	\$	3	\$	3	\$
1 - 3600	sec.	1 - 10	times	1 - 10	times

### WAN Redundancy Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default					
Disabled	Disable redundancy. If the connection on the WAN interface						
Disableu	becomes unavailable, the connection will be lost.						
	If the connection on the active WAN interface becomes	Disabled					
Backup	unavailable, the system will automatically switch to the other						
	WAN interface to recover the connection.						

### WAN Switching Mode

MAN OWNCENING MODE		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Failover	The system will only switch to the backup WAN interface when	
railovei	the current WAN interface becomes unavailable.	
Failback	The system will switch to the backup WAN interface when the current WAN interface becomes unavailable. When the original higher priority WAN interface recovers, the system will switch	
	back.	

### Ping Interval

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 3600	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which the device will	5
1 10 5000	perform a connection alive check.	J

### Ping Failure Retry Times

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the number of times the device will ping the configured host IP through the active WAN interface. If the	
	ping check consecutively fails for the specified number of	
1 to 10	retries, the device will consider the WAN interface unavailable and will switch to the backup WAN interface. The host IP is	3
	configured per WAN interface. Refer to Modify a WAN	
	Redundancy Interface.	

### **Ping Success Retry Times**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 10	Specify the number of times the device will ping the configured host IP through the higher priority WAN interface in Failback mode. If the ping check consecutively succeeds for the specified number of retries, the device will consider the WAN interface recovered and will switch back to that WAN interface. The host IP is configured per WAN interface. Refer to Modify a WAN Redundancy Interface.	3

## **Reorder the WAN Interface Priority**

WAN Backup Priority

t≡					Q Search
	Priority	Interface	WAN Redundancy	Host IP Address	
1	1	Ethernet WAN	Disabled	0.0.0.0	
1	2	Cellular	Disabled	0.0.0.0	

From the WAN Backup Priority table, click the **Reorder** ( $\ddagger$ ) icon, then click and drag the interface to its desired priority.

The device will always connect to the Internet through WAN interface with the highest priority, while the other WAN interface will act as a backup. If WAN redundancy is enabled, the system will switch to the backup interface if the active WAN interface becomes unavailable.

## Modify a WAN Redundancy Interface

WAN	Ba	ckup Pri	iority			
t	≡					Q Search
		Priority	Interface	WAN Redundancy	Host IP Address	
	r	1	Ethernet WAN	Disabled	0.0.0	
-	*	2	Cellular	Disabled	0.0.0.0	

From the WAN Backup Priority table, click the **Edit** ( ) icon to edit the settings of that WAN interface.

WAN Redundancy *				
Disabled	•	1		
Host IP Address				
0.0.0.0				

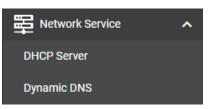
WAN Redundancy	WAN Redundancy						
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable WAN redundancy functionality for this interface.	Disabled					
Host IP Address							
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
IP address	Enter the ping host IP address. This is used to perform WAN connection alive checks.	0.0.0.0					

## Status

The Status screen shows the current connection and redundancy status of the WAN interfaces. A green dot indicates an Internet connection is established on that interface. A grey dot means the interface is not in use.

	Set	tings	State	us
l		Priority	Interface	WAN Redundancy
1	•	1	Eth Wan 1	Enabled
		2	Cellular	Enabled

From the **Network Service** section the following functions can be configured: **DHCP Server**, and **Dynamic DNS**.



# **DHCP Server**

From the DHCP Server screen, you can enable the DHCP and configure the various DHCP Server modes.

## **General Settings**

HCP Server				
General	DHCP	MAC-based IP Assignment	Port-based IP Assignment	Lease Table
Mode				
Disabled		<b>•</b>		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Disabled, DHCP/MAC-based assignment, Port-based IP assignment	Select the DHCP Server Mode. Each mode has its own configuration settings. Refer to the following sections for more information: <u>DHCP</u> <u>MAC-based IP Assignment</u> <u>Port-based IP Assignment</u>	Disabled

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## DHCP

The Industrial Secure Router provides DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server functionality for LAN interfaces. When configured, the Industrial Secure Router will automatically assign an IP address from a user-configured IP address pool to connected Ethernet devices.

### **DHCP Server**

General	DHCP	MAC-based IP Assignment	Port-based IP Assignment	Lease Table		
		-				
Ð				<b>Q</b> Search		
Stat	us Pool IP Range	Subnet Mask Lea	se Time (min.) Default Gateway	DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2	NTP Server

### **Create a DHCP Server Pool**

Click 🖿 to create a new DHCP Server Pool.

Create DHCP Server	Pool		
Status 👻			
Starting IP Address *	Subnet Mask *	•	
Ending IP Address *			
Default Gateway			
Lease Time * 1440			
5 - 99999 min.			
DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2		
NTP Server			
		CANCEL	CREATE

### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable DHCP server functionality.	Disabled
Starting IP Addres	35	
Starting IP Addres Setting	Description	Factory Default

Subnet Mask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask for DHCP clients.	None
Ending IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the ending IP address of the DHCP IP pool.	None
Default Gateway		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the default gateway for DHCP clients.	None
Lease Time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
5 to 99999 minutes	Specify the lease time for IP addresses assigned by the DHCP server.	1440
DNS Server 1		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the first DNS server for DHCP clients.	None
DNS Server 2		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the second DNS server for DHCP clients.	None
NTP Server		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the NTP server for DHCP clients.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.



## NOTE

The DHCP Server is only available for LAN interfaces.

The DHCP pool's Starting/Ending IP Address must be in the same LAN subnet.

### **Delete a DHCP Server Pool**

Click  $\widehat{\blacksquare}$  next to the DHCP Server pool entry you want to delete.

### **Modify a DHCP Server Pool**

Click *I* to next to the DHCP Server Pool you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **MAC-based IP Assignment**

Use the Static DHCP list to ensure that devices connected to the Industrial Secure Router always use the same IP address. The static DHCP list matches IP addresses to MAC addresses.

General	DHCP	MAC-based IP Assignment	Port-based	IP Assignment	Lease Table				
Ð						Q	Search		
Sta	us Hostname	IP Address	Subnet Mask	MAC Address	Lease Time (min.)	Default Gateway	DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2	NTP Server

For example, a device named "Device-01" was added to the Static DHCP list, with a static IP address set to 192.168.127.101 and MAC address set to 00:09:ad:00:aa:01. When a device with a MAC address of 00:09:ad:00:aa:01 is connected to the Industrial Secure Router, the Industrial Secure Router will offer the IP address 192.168.127.101 to this device.

### **Create a MAC-based IP Entry**

Click 🖬 to create a new MAC-based IP entry. The hostname, IP address, and MAC address must be different from any existing MAC-based IP entries.

Create Entry				
Status	•			
Hostname *				
	0/63			
IP Address *		Subnet Mask *	•	
MAC Address *				
Default Gateway				
Lease Time * 1440				
5 - 99999	min.			
DNS Server 1		DNS Server 2		
NTP Server				
			CANCEL	CREATE

Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable MAC-based IP assignment functionality.	None
Hostname		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 63 characters	Enter a hostname for the device.	None
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the device.	None
Subnet Mask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask of the device.	None
MAC Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
MAC Address	Specify the MAC address of the device.	None
Default Gateway		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the default gateway of the device.	None
Lease Time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
5-99999 minutes	Specify the lease time for IP addresses assigned by the DHCP server.	1440
DNS Server 1		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the first DNS server for DHCP clients.	None
DNS Server 2		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the second DNS server for DHCP clients.	None
NTP Server		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the NTP server for DHCP clients.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

### **Delete a MAC-based IP Entry**

Select the entry from the list and click  $\hat{\blacksquare}$ .

### Modify a MAC-based IP Entry

Click 🖍 next to the MAC-based IP entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Port-based IP Assignment**

Genera	al	DHC	P	MAC-based IP Assignment	Port-based IF	Assignment	Lease Table		
Ð							Q Search		
	Port	Status	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Lease Time (min.)	Default Gateway	DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2	NTP Server

## **Create a Port-based IP Entry**

Click 
to create a new port-based IP entry.

Create Entry				
Status	•			
Port *	•			
IP Address *		Subnet Mask *	•	
Default Gateway				
Lease Time * 1440				
5 - 99999	min.			
DNS Server 1		DNS Server 2		
NTP Server				
			CANCEL	CREATE

### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Port-based IP assignment functionality.	None
Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
		None

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the connected device.	None

Subnet Mask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask for the connected device.	None
Default Gateway		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the default gateway for the connected device.	None
Lease Time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
5-99999 minutes	Specify the lease time for IP addresses assigned by the DHCP server.	1440
DNS Server 1		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the first DNS server for the connected device.	None
DNS Server 2		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the second DNS server for the connected device.	None
NTP Server		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the NTP server for the connected device.	None
When finished, click <b>(</b>	CREATE to save your configuration.	
Delete a Port-b	ased IP Entry	
Select the entry from	the list and click <b>1</b> .	
Modify a Port-b	ased IP Entry	

Click 🖍 to next to the Port-based IP entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### **Lease Table**

The Lease Table provides an overview of the current DHCP clients.

General	DHCP	MAC-based IP Assig	gnment	Port-based IP As	signment	 Lease T	able	_
c			<b>Q</b> Sea	rch				
Hostname	IP Address	MAC Address	Time L	eft				

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the table.

# **Dynamic DNS**

Dynamic DNS (Domain Name Server) allows you to use a domain name to connect to the Industrial Secure Router. The Industrial Secure Router can connect to four free DNS servers and register a domain name on these servers.

Service *	
Disabled	•
Service Name	
Username	
	0/45
Password	
	0/45
Confirm Passwo	rd
	0/45
Domain Name	
	0/45

Service	

Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Disabled,				
freedns.afraid.org,				
www.3322.org,	Disable or select a DNS server.	Disabled		
DynDns.org,				
NO-IP.com				

#### Service Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 45 characters	The DNS server's name.	None

#### Username

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 45 characters	Enter the DNS server username.	None

### Password

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 45 characters	Enter the DNS server password.	None

#### Confirm Password

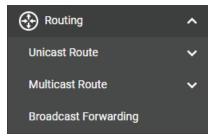
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 45 characters	Confirm the DNS server password.	None

### Domain name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 45 characters	Enter the DNS server's domain name	None

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

From the **Routing** section, you can configure the **Unicast Route**, **Multicast Route**, and **Broadcast Forwarding** settings.



# **Unicast Route**

The Industrial Secure Router supports two routing methods: static routing and dynamic routing. Dynamic routing makes use of RIP V1/V1c/V2. You can either choose one routing method or combine the two methods to establish your routing table. A routing entry includes the following items: the destination address, the next hop address (which is the next router along the path to the destination address), and a metric that represents the cost to access a different network.

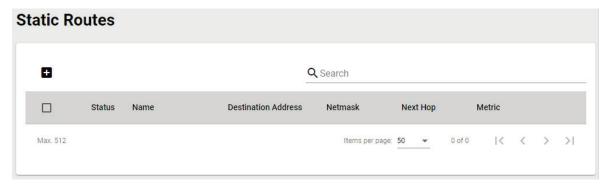
From the **Unicast Route** section, the following functions can be configured: **Static Routes, RIP, OSPF,** and **Routing Table**.



### **Static Routes**

The Static Routing page is used to configure the Industrial Secure Router's static routing table.

Static routes allow you to specify the next hop (or router) that the Industrial Secure Router forwards data to for a specific subnet. The Static Route settings will be added to the routing table and stored on the Industrial Secure Router.



### **Create a Static Route**

Click 
to create a new static route.

Create new static rou	ite		
Status *			
Name *			
Destination Address *	Subnet Mask *	Ŧ	
Next Hop *	Metric *		
	1 - 254	CANCEL	CREATE

### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the static route.	None

### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 10 characters	Enter a name for the static route.	None
Destination Address		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Destination address	Specify the destination IP address.	None

### Subnet Mask

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet mask	Specify the subnet mask for this IP address.	None

#### Next Hop

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Next hop IP address	Specify the next router on the path to the destination IP.	None

### Metric

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 254	Specify the metric value for the route.	None

Click **CREATE** to add the entry to the Static Routing Table.

### **Delete a Static Route**

Select the entry from the list and click  $\mathbf{I}$ .

### Modify an Existing Static Route

Click 🖍 next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Multicast Route**

From the **Multicast Route** section, the following functions can be configured: **Multicast Route**, and **Static Multicast Route**.



# **Multicast Route Settings**

The industrial secure router supports one multicast routing protocol: Static Multicast Route.

Multicast Route Settings			
Mode * Disabled	v		
APPLY			

### Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Static Multicast Route, Disabled	Disable multicast routing or select which multicast routing protocol to use (Static multicast route).	Disabled

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Static Multicast Route**

The Static Multicast Route table shows all static multicast entries.

S	tatic M	ulticas	st Route							
	0				Q Search					
		Status	Group Address	Source Address	Inbound Interface	Outbound Interface				
	Max. 256				Items per p	bage: 50 ▼ 0 of 0	<	<	>	>1

### **Create a Static Multicast Route**

Click the 🛨 icon to create a new Static Multicast Route.

Create Static Mul	ticast Route	e	
Status *			
Enabled			
Group Address *			
Source Address Type *			
Any	•		
Inbound Interface *	•		
Outbound Interface *			*
			CANCEL

### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the static multicast route.	Enabled

#### Group Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default				
IP address	Specify the group IP address	None				

### Source Address Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any	Set the source to any IP address.	Anv
Specify Source	Set the source to a specified IP address only.	АПУ

#### Source Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	If the Source Address Type is Specify Source, enter the source IP address.	None

### Inbound Interface

Setting D	Description	Factory Default
LAN, WAN S	Select which interface the broadcast packet will come from.	None

### **Outbound Interface**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
LAN, WAN	Select which interface the broadcast packet will pass through.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

### Modify an Existing Static Multicast Route

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### **Delete an Existing Static Multicast Route**

Select the item(s) in the Static Multicast Route List, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and then click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

# **Broadcast Forwarding**

In some scenarios, users may have to issue broadcast packets to query all the devices on the network for data collecting, such as Modbus devices. However, normally, broadcast packets cannot pass through the router. Broadcast Forwarding allows users to configure which interface and UDP port numbers broadcast packets will pass through.

Broadcas	st Forwarding	g						
Status * Disabled	•							
APPLY								
			<b>Q</b> Se	arch				
	Inbound Interface	Outbound Interface	UDP Port					
Max. 32				Items per page: 50 👻	0 of 0	<	< >	X

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Broadcast Forwarding. Enable this function to allow broadcast packets to pass through the Industrial Secure Router.	Disabled

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### **Create a Broadcast Forwarding Entry**

Click the 🖬 icon to create a new Broadcast Forwarding entry.

Create Broadcast	Foi	rwardi	ng		
Inbound Interface *	•				
Outbound Interface *	•				
UDP Port *		0			
				CANCEL	CREATE

Inbound Interface		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
LAN, WAN	Select which interface the broadcast packet will come from.	None
Outbound Interface		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
LAN, WAN	Select which interface the broadcast packet will pass through.	None
UDP Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
UDP Port Number	Specify the service port number. You can enter multiple port numbers up to a total of 8 ports. For example, entering "67, 68, 520, 1701" means the device will listen on UDP ports 67, 68, 520, and 1701.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

### Modify the Existing Broadcast Forwarding

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### **Delete the Existing Broadcast Forwarding**

Select the item(s) in the Broadcast Forwarding List, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

# **NAT Concept**

NAT (Network Address Translation) is a common security function for changing the IP address during Ethernet packet transmission. When the user wants to hide the internal IP address (LAN) from the external network (WAN), the NAT function will translate the internal IP address to a specific IP address, or an internal IP address range to one external IP address. The benefits of using NAT include:

- The N-1 or port forwarding NAT function to hide the internal IP address of a critical network or device to increase the level of security of industrial network applications.
- The Industrial Secure Router uses the same private IP address for different, but identical, groups of Ethernet devices. For example, 1-to-1 NAT makes it easy to duplicate or extend identical production lines.



### ΝΟΤΕ

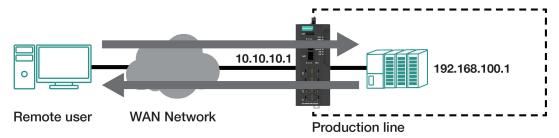
The NAT function will check if incoming or outgoing packets match the policy. It starts by checking the packet against the first policy (Index=1); if the packet matches this policy, the Industrial Secure Router will translate the address immediately and then start checking the next packet. If the packet does not match this policy, it will check with the next policy.

### NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router supports a maximum of 512 NAT policies.

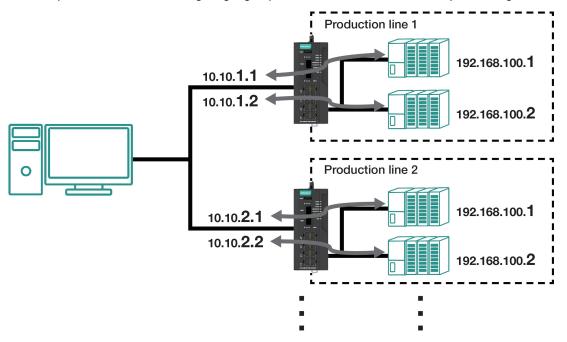
# **1-to-1 NAT Overview**

If the internal device and external device need to communicate with each other, choose 1-to-1 NAT, which offers bi-directional communication (N-to-1 and Port forwarding are both single-directional communication NAT functions).



1-to-1 NAT is usually used when you have a group of internal servers with private IP addresses that must connect to the external network. You can use 1-to-1 NAT to map the internal servers to public IP addresses. The IP address of the internal device will not change. 1-to-1 NAT will also create a corresponding secondary IP address (10.10.10.1) if the device is in the same subnet as the incoming interface.

The figure below illustrates how a user could extend production lines and use the same private IP addresses of internal devices in each production line. The internal private IP addresses of these devices will map to different public IP addresses. Configuring a group of devices for 1-to-1 NAT is easy and straightforward.



### 1-to-1 NAT Setting in Production Line 1

	Status	Description	Index	Mode	Protocol	Incoming Interface	Src. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Outgoing Interface	Src. IP:Port (Translated Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Translated Packet)
• /	Enabled	1-to-1_production_line_1-1	1	1-to-1		WAN	Any:Any	10.10.1.1:Any	All	Any:Any	192.168.100.1:Any
. /	Enabled	1-to-1_production_line_1-2	2	1-to-1		WAN	Any:Any	10.10.1.2:Any	All	Any:Any	192.168.100.2:Any

### 1-to-1 NAT Setting in Production Line 2

	Status	Description	Index	Mode	Protocol	Incoming Interface	Src. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Outgoing Interface	Src. IP:Port (Translated Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Translated Packet)
□ /	Enabled	1-to-1_production_line_2-1	1	1-to-1		WAN	Any:Any	10.10.2.1:Any	All	Any:Any	192.168.100.1:Any
•	Enabled	1-to-1_production_line_2-2	2	1-to-1		WAN	Any:Any	10.10.2.2:Any	All	Any:Any	192.168.100.2:Any

# 1-to-1 NAT

Create Index 2					
Status * Enabled	•				<b>^</b>
Description					
Description			0 / 128		
Index *					
1 - 512					
Mode 1-to-1	•				
NAT Loopback Disabled	÷	Double NAT Disabled	-		
VRRP Binding Disabled	*				
Original Packet (	Condit	tion)			
LAN	•				
Destination IP * 0.0.0.0					
Translated	Doo	kat (A atia	(m)		
Translated	Pac	ket (Actio	on)		
Destination IP * 0.0.0.0					•
				CANCEL	APPLY

### Status

Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT policy.	Enabled
Description		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Description	Enter a name for the NAT rule.	None
Index		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 512	Specify the index of the NAT rule.	1

NAT Mode		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1-to-1 N-to-1 PAT Advance	Select 1-to-1 as the NAT type. For other NAT modes, refer to: <u>N-to-1</u> <u>PAT</u> Advance	1-to-1

### NAT Loopback

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT Loopback function. Refer to <u>NAT</u> Loopback for more information.	Disabled	
Double NAT			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Setting Enabled or Disabled	Description Enable or disable the Double NAT function. Refer to <u>Double</u> <u>NAT</u> for more information.	Factory Default Disabled	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
VRRP Index No	Select which VRRP settings the 1-to-1 NAT rule should use.	Disabled

### NOTE

VRRP Binding is only supported in 1-to-1 NAT. If a VRRP index is selected, the 1-to-1 NAT rule is only valid when the system is the master. If no VRRP index is selected, the1-to-1 NAT rule will be valid regardless of if the system is the master or backup.

### Original Packet (Condition)

Incoming Inte	rface	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
All		
LAN	Select the incoming interface for the NAT rule.	LAN
WAN		

### Destination IP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Set the public IP address which the internal IP will be	0.0.0.0
IF AUULESS	translated into.	0.0.0.0

### Translated Packet (Action)

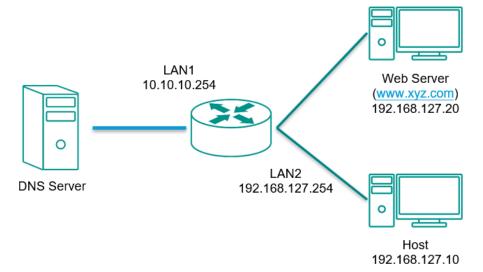
### Destination IP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the internal IP address on the LAN.	0.0.0.0

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **NAT Loopback**

NAT Loopback is designed to facilitate communication with service servers which have external IP translation within the same LAN segment. Consider the following scenario:



- 1. Host tries to access the web server via <u>www.xyz.com</u>.
- 2. The DNS server returns the Web Server IP: 10.10.10.20.
- 3. Host will start to send the request packets to 10.10.10.20.

#### With NAT Loopback disabled:

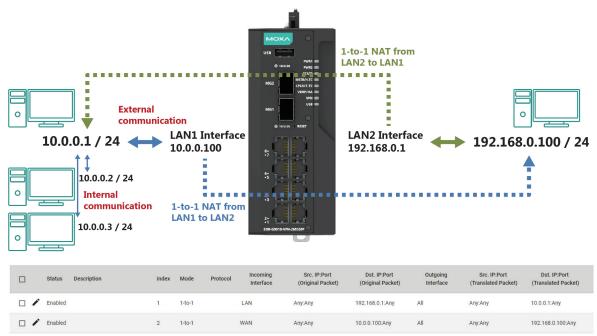
- Because the request packet comes from Host, the incoming interface does not match any NAT rule.
- The Industrial Secure Router will receive the request packet because the NAT rule has created a secondary IP: 10.10.10.20.
- The Industrial Secure Router sends the response packet to Host itself.
- Host will access the Web Server via <u>www.xyz.com</u>.

#### With NAT Loopback enabled:

- The Industrial Secure Router will forward the request packet from Host to the Web Server with Destination (from 10.10.10.20 to 192.168.127.20) and Source (from 192.168.127.10 to 10.10.10.20) IP translation.
- The Web Server sends the response packet to the Industrial Secure Router. The Industrial Secure Router then forwards it to Host with Destination (from 10.10.10.20 to 192.168.127.10) and Source (from 192.168.127.20 to 10.10.10.20) IP translation.
- Host will correctly access the Web Server via <u>www.xyz.com</u>.

Status Description	Index	Mode	Protocol	Incoming Interface	Src. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Outgoing Interface	Src. IP:Port (Translated Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Translated Packet)
Enabled	1	1-to-1	L	.AN	Any:Any	10.10.10.20:Any	All	Any:Any	192.168.127.20:Any

# Bidirectional 1-to-1 NAT

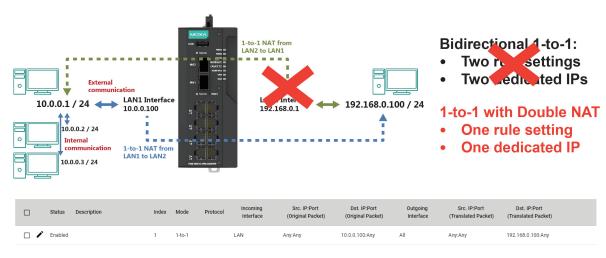


For some applications, devices need to talk to both internal and external devices without using a gateway. Bidirectional 1-to-1 NAT can do Network Address Translation in both directions without needing a gateway.

# **Double NAT**

The traditional bidirectional 1-to-1 NAT concept uses two 1-to-1 rules to facilitate two-way communication, as in the example below. With Double NAT, only 1-to-1 rule is necessary. The Industrial Secure Router will automatically translate the incoming and outgoing addresses as if it was handling two separate rules, one for inbound and one for outbound. The main advantage of Double NAT is that it reduces the number of NAT rules and necessary IP addresses.

### Example



### NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router can obtain an IP address via DHCP or PPPoE. However, if this dynamic IP address is the same as the WAN IP for 1-to-1 NAT, then the 1-to-1 NAT function will not work. For this reason, we recommend disabling the DHCP/PPPoE function when using the 1-to-1 NAT.

# N-to-1 NAT

If the user wants to hide the internal IP address from users outside the LAN, the easiest way is to use the N-to-1 (or N-1) NAT function. N-1 NAT replaces the source IP address with an outgoing interface IP address and adds a logical port number to identify the connection of this internal/external IP address. This function is also called "Network Address Port Translation" (NAPT) or "IP Masquerading".

Create Index 2			
Status *			
Enabled	*		
Description			
	0 / 128		
Index *			
2			
1 - 512			
Mode			
N-to-1			
Original Packet ( Source IP: Start * 0.0.0.0	Source IP: End * 0.0.0.0		
Translated	Packet (Action)		
Outgoing Interface			
Cellular	•		
		CANCEL	APPL

### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT policy.	Enabled
Description		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Description	Enter a name for the NAT rule.	None
Index		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 512	Specify the index of the NAT rule.	1
NAT Mode		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1-to-1 N-to-1 PAT Advance	Select N-to-1 as the NAT type. For other NAT modes, refer to: <u>1-to-1</u> <u>PAT</u> <u>Advance</u>	1-to-1

### **Original Packet (Condition)**

Source IP: Start			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
IP address	Specify the starting IP address of the source IP range.	0.0.0.0	

Source IP: End		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the ending IP address of the source IP range.	0.0.0.0

### Translated Packet (Action)

<b>Outgoing Interfa</b>	ace	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Cellular		
LAN	Select the outgoing interface for the NAT rule.	LAN
Active WAN		

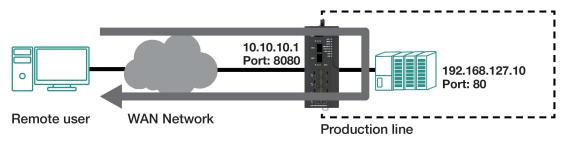
When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **PAT (Port Address Translation)**

If the initial connection is from outside the LAN, but the user still wants to hide the internal IP address, one way to do this is to use the PAT NAT function.

The user can specify the port number of an external IP address (WAN1 or WAN2) in the Port Forwarding policy list. For example, if the IP address of a web server in the internal network is 192.168.127.10 with port 80, the user can set up a Port Forwarding policy to let remote users connect to the internal web server from external IP address 10.10.10.10 through port 8080. The Industrial Secure Router will transfer the packet to IP address 192.168.127.10 through port 80.

The PAT NAT function is one way of connecting from an external non-secure area (WAN) to an internal secure area (LAN). The user can initiate the connection from the external network to the internal network, but not the other way around.



			riptic						Factor	
tatus										
Status Description		Index	Mode PAT	Protocol	Incoming Interface WAN	Src. IP:Port (Original Packet) Any:Any	Dst. IP:Port (Original Packet) Dynamic:8080	Outgoing Interface All	Src. IP:Port (Translated Packet) Any:Any	Dst. IP:Port (Translated Pack 192.168.127.10:1
					Incoming	Src. ID:Dort	Dst IP:Port	Outgoing	Src. IP-Port	Dst ID-Dort
							CANCEL	APPLY		
- 65535										
)										
Destination Port *										
0.0.0										
Destination IP *										
Translated	Pack	ket (	Acti	ion)						
I - 65535										
Destination Port *										
Continuing Down										
ncoming Interface LAN	•									
Original Packet	(Conditio	on)								
Disabled	Ŧ	Disable			×					
NAT Loopback		Double N	AT							
Protocol					*					
PAT	*									
Mode										
2										
ndex *										
2000 mp troit					0 / 128					
Description										
Enabled	-									
Status *										

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT policy.	Enabled
Description		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Description	Enter a name for the NAT rule.	None
Index		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 512	Specify the index of the NAT rule.	1

NAT Mode		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1-to-1 N-to-1 PAT Advance	Select PAT as the NAT type. For other NAT modes, refer to: <u>1-to-1</u> <u>N-to-1</u> Advance	1-to-1

### Protocol

Setting	Description	Factory Default
ICMP		
ТСР	Select the NAT policy protocol.	None
UDP		

#### NAT Loopback

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT Loopback function. Refer to <u>NAT</u> Loopback for more information.	Disabled

### Double NAT

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Double NAT function. Refer to <u>Double</u> <u>NAT</u> for more information.	Disabled

### **Original Packet (Condition)**

### Incoming Interface

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All		
LAN	Select the interface for the NAT policy.	LAN
WAN		

### **Destination Port**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the destination port number.	0

### Translated Packet (Action)

### Destination IP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the translated IP address on the internal network.	0.0.0
Destination Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default

SettingDescriptionFactory Default1 to 65535Specify the translated port number on the internal network.0

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{APPLY}}$  to save your changes.

# Advance

The Advance NAT function opens up all available options to advanced users to customize their own settings.

### Create Index 2

Status \* Enabled .

Description Index \* 2 1-512

0/128

Mode Advance

Protocol

.

×

Original Packet (Condition) Incoming Interface LAN

Source IP Mapping Type Any -

Source Port Mapping Type Any .

Destination IP Mapping Type Any .

Destination Port Mapping Type Single .

Destination Port\* 0 1+65535

### **Translated Packet (Action)**

Outgoing Interface Any . Source IP Mapping Type Any Source Port Mapping Type Any . Destination IP Mapping Type Single . Destination IP \* 0.0.0.0 Destination Port Mapping Type Single . Destination Port \* 0 1 - 65535

CANCEL APPLY

Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT policy.	Enabled
Description		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Description	Enter a name for the NAT rule.	None
Index		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 512	Specify the index of the NAT rule.	1
NAT Mode		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1-to-1 N-to-1 PAT Advance	Select Advance as the NAT type. For other NAT modes, refer to: <u>1-to-1</u> <u>N-to-1</u> <u>PAT</u>	1-to-1

### Protocol

Setting	Description	Factory Default
ICMP		
ТСР	Select the NAT policy protocol.	None
UDP		

### **Original Packet (Condition)**

### Incoming Interface

<b>y</b>		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
All		
LAN	Select the interface for the NAT policy.	LAN
WAN		

### Source IP Mapping Type

5 //	
Description	Factory Default
Select the source IP mapping type.	Any
	Description

### Source Port Mapping Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any		
Single	Select the source port mapping type.	Any
Range		

Destination IP Mapping Type				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Any				
Single		Any		
Range	Select the destination IP mapping type.			
Subnet mask				

### Destination IP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the translated IP address on the internal network.	0.0.0

### **Destination Port Mapping Type**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any		
Single	Select the destination port mapping type.	Single
Range		

### **Translated Packet (Action)**

### **Outgoing Interface**

Setting	Description	Factory Default		
All				
LAN	Select the interface for the NAT policy.	Any		
WAN				

### Source IP Mapping Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Any					
Single					
Range	Select the source IP mapping type.	Any			
Subnet mask					
Dynamic					

#### Source Port Mapping Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Any				
Single	Select the source port mapping type.	Any		
Range				

# Destination IP Mapping Type Setting Description

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any		
Single	Coloct the destination ID manning type	Cingle
Range	Select the destination IP mapping type.	Single
Subnet mask		

#### Destination IP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the translated IP address on the internal network.	0.0.0.0

### **Destination Port Mapping Type**

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Any			
Single	Select the destination port mapping type.	Single	
Range			

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Overview**

The Industrial Secure Routers support object-based firewall management to help protect your network on a granular level. From the Object Management screen, you can create, modify, and edit the objects you need based on your security requirements. These objects are used in firewall policies that can be configured on the Firewall function page.

In addition, objects allow for more efficient firewall rule management. A single object can be assigned to multiple rules and changes to the object will apply to all associated rules, saving users time having to update individual policies one by one.

Object N	Management			
٥			Q Search	
	Name	Туре	Detail	Ref. Count
Max. 512			Items per page: 50 👻	0 of 0  < < > >

### NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router supports a maximum of 512 objects.

# **Create a New Object**

The Industrial Secure Router supports several types of objects, depending on the security requirements for your network.

On the **Object Management** page, click the 🖬 icon to create a new object.

Create Object		
Name *		
Object Type *		
	CANCEL	CREATE

### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 32 characters	Enter a name for the object.	None

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select the type of object.	
IP Address and Subnet,	Refer to the following sections for more information about	
	each object type:	
Industrial Application	Create an IP Address and Subnet Object	None
Service,	Create a Network Service Object	
User-Defined Service	Create an Industrial Application Service Object	
	Create a User-defined Service Object	

# **Create an IP Address and Subnet Object**

IP address/subnet-based objects allow traffic filtering for a single IP, an IP range, or a subnet.

On the **Object Management** page, click the **I** icon to create a new object and select **IP Address and Subnet** as the Object Type.

Create Objec	t			
Name *				
Object-01				
	9 / 32			
Object Type				
IP Address and S	Subnet	-		
27. 				
IP Type *	-			
			CANCEL	CREATE

### IP Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Single IP, IP Range, Subnet	Select the IP type. Refer to the following sections for more information about each option.	None

### Single IP

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9/32			
Object Type *			
IP Address and Subnet	*		
IP Туре			
Single IP			
IP Address *			
		CANCEL	CREATE

IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Enter a valid IP address.	None

### IP Range

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9 / 32			
Object Type *			
IP Address and Subnet	*		
IP Туре			
IP Range			
IP Address: Start *	IP Address: End *		
		CANCEL	CREATE

### IP Address: Start

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the starting IP address of the IP range.	None

### IP Address: End

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the ending IP address of the IP range.	None

### Subnet

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9 / 32			
Object Type *			
IP Address and Subnet	-		
IP Туре			
Subnet -			
Subnet *	Subnet Mask *	¥	
		CANCEL	CREATE

### Subnet

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	None	
Subnet Mask		
Subnet Mask Setting	Description	Factory Default

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{CREATE}}$  to create the object.

# **Create a Network Service Object**

Service-based objects allow for traffic filtering based on specific network services.

On the **Object Management** page, click the **I** icon to create a new object and select **Network Service** as the Object Type.

Create Object		
Name *		
Object-01		
9 / 32		
Object Type		
Network Service	- 7	
Select Network Service		
>  Remote-Access		
> 🗌 Remote-Desktop		
> 🗌 Email		
>      File-Transfer		
> Web-Access		
>  Network-Service		
>      Authentication		
> VOIP-and-Streaming		
> SQL-Server		
	CANCE	CREATE

### Select Network Service

Select the network service(s) you want to enable. Refer to the table below for more details about each service.

Service Name	Protocol (Port Number)
	WINS (TPC 1512; UDP 1512)
Remote-Access	TELNET (TCP 23)
	SSH (TCP 22)
	PC-Anywhere (TCP 5631; UDP 5632)
	Chrome-Remote-Desktop (UDP 5222)
	AnyDesk (TCP 6568, 7070; UDP 50001 - 50003)
Remote-Desktop	Teamviewer (TCP 5938)
•	RDP (TCP 3389)
	VNC (TCP 5900)
	X-WINDOW (TCP 6000 - 6063)
	IMAP (TCP 143)
	IMAPS (TCP 993)
	POP3 (TCP 110)
Email	POP3S (TCP 995)
	SMTP (TCP 25)
	SMTPS (TCP 465)
	FTP (TCP 21)
	FTPS (TCP 990)
	SFTP (TCP 115; UDP 115)
	TFTP (UDP 69)
File-Transfer	NFS (TCP 111, 2049; UDP 111, 2049)
	SAMBA (TCP 139)
	AFS3 (TCP 7000 – 7009; UDP 7000 - 7009)
	SMB (TCP 445)
	HTTP (TCP 80)
Web-Access	HTTPS (TCP 443)
	BGP (TCP 179)
	DHCP (UDP 67)
	DHCP6 (UDP 546)
	DNS (TCP 53; UDP 53)
	NTP (TCP 123; UDP 123)
Network-Service	ICMP-PING (ICMP Type Any Code Any)
	OSPF (IP Protocol 89)
	RIP (TCP 520)
	SNMP (TCP 161 – 162; UDP 161 - 162)
	SYSLOG (UDP 514)
	LDAP (TCP 389; UDP 389)
	LDAPS (TCP 636; UDP 636)
Authentication	RADIUS (UDP 1812 – 1813)
	TACACS+ (TCP 49; UDP 49)
	SIP (TCP 5060; UDP 5060)
VOIP-and-Streaming	RSTP (TCP 554, 7070, 8554; UDP 554)
	MS-SQL (TCP 1433 - 1434)
SQL-Server	MYSQL (TCP 3306)

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{CREATE}}$  to create the object.

# **Create an Industrial Application Service Object**

Industrial application service-based objects allow for traffic filtering based on specific industrial application protocols.

On the **Object Management** page, click the **D** icon to create a new object and select **Industrial Application Service** as the Object Type.

Create Object
Name * Object-01 9/32
Object Type Industrial Application Service
Select Industrial Application Service
Modbus (TCP 502; UDP 502)
DNP3 (TCP 20000)
IEC-60870-5-104 (TCP 2404)
EC-61850-MMS (TCP 102)
OPC-DA (TCP 135)
OPC-UA (TCP 4840; UDP 4840)
CIP-EtherNet/IP (TCP 44818; UDP 2222)
Siemens-Step7 (TCP 102)
Moxa-RealCOM (TCP 950 - 981)
Moxa-MXview-Request (TCP 161, 162, 443, 4000; UDP 4000, 40404)
CANCEL CREATE

### Select Industrial Application Service

Select the industrial application service(s) you want to enable. Refer to the table below for more details about each service.

Service Name	Port Number
Modbus	TCP 502; UDP 502
DNP3	TCP 20000
IEC-60870-5-104	TCP 2404
IEC-61850-MMS	TCP 102
OPC-DA	TCP 135
OPC-UA	TCP 4840; UDP 4840
CIP-EtherNet/IP	TCP 44818; UDP 2222
Siemens-Step7	TCP 102
Moxa-RealCOM	TCP 950 – 981
Moxa-MXview-Request	TCP 161, 162, 443, 4000; UDP 4000, 40404

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the object.

# **Create a User-defined Service Object**

User-defined service-based objects allow for traffic filtering based on user-defined communication protocols.

On the **Object Management** page, click the **D** icon to create a new object and select **User-defined Service** as the Object Type.

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9 / 32			
Object Type			
User-defined Service	-		
IP Protocol *			
		CANCEL	CREATE

IP Protocol			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
TCP, UDP,			
TCP and UDP,	Select a protocol. Refer to the following sections for more	News	
ICMP,	information about each option.	None	
Custom IP Protocol			

### TCP, UDP, TCP and UDP

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9 / 32			
Object Type *			
User-defined Service	*		
IP Protocol			
TCP	•		
Service Port Type * 👻			
		CANCEL	CREATE

### Service Port Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any,		
Single TCP and UDP		
Port,	Select a port type for the protocol.	None
TCP and UDP Port		
Range		

If you selected **Single TCP and UDP Port** as the port type, you also need to specify a port number. The port number range is between 1 to 65535.

Create Object		
Name *		
0 / 32		
Object Type *		
User-defined Service 🔹		
IP Protocol *		
TCP -		
Service Port Type		
Single TCP and UDP 👻		
Port *		
1 - 65535		
1-00000		
	CANCEL	CREATE

If you selected **TCP and UDP Port Range** as the port type, you also need to specify the starting and ending port number. The port number range is between 1 to 65535.

Create Object			
Name *			
0 / 32			
Object Type *			
User-defined Service	•		
IP Protocol *			
ТСР	•		
Service Port Type TCP and UDP Port R 🔻			
Port: Start *	Port: End *		
1 - 65535	1 - 65535		
		CANCEL	CREATE

### ICMP

Create Object		
Name *		
Object-01		
9/32		
Object Type *		
User-defined Service	*	
IP Protocol *		
ICMP	•	
ICMP Type (Decimal)		
Leave blank to represent any	0 - 255	
ICMP Code (Decimal)		
Leave blank to represent any	0 - 255	
		CANCEL

### ICMP Type (Decimal)

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Blank, 0 to 255	Specify the ICMP type value.	None

### ICMP Code (Decimal)

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Blank, 0 to 255	Specify the ICMP code value.	None

### **Custom IP protocol**

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9 / 32			
Object Type *			
User-defined Service	•		
IP Protocol			
Custom IP Protocol	•		
IP Protocol (Decimal) *			
0 - 255			
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### IP Protocol (Decimal)

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 255	Specify the IP protocol value.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the object.

# **Modify an Existing Object**

In the object list, click the **Edit** () icon next to entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### **Object Management**

	Name	Туре	Detail	Ref. Count
۰C	Object-01	User-defined Service	ТСР	0
	Object-02	Network Service	Remote-Access	0

# **Delete an Object**

Select the item(s) in the object list, click the **Delete** ( $\mathbf{I}$ ) icon. When prompted to confirm, click **DELETE** to delete the object(s).

Object N	lanagement			
		QS	iearch	
	Name	Туре	Detail	Ref. Count
<b></b>	Object-01	User-defined Service	TCP	0
	Object-02	Network Service	Remote-Access	0
Max. 512			Items per page: 50 ▼ 1 − 2 of 2	K < > >I

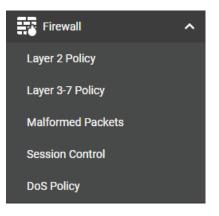
# Search for an Object

Enter a search term in the Search field. Any object matching the search criteria will be shown in the object list.

### **Object Management**

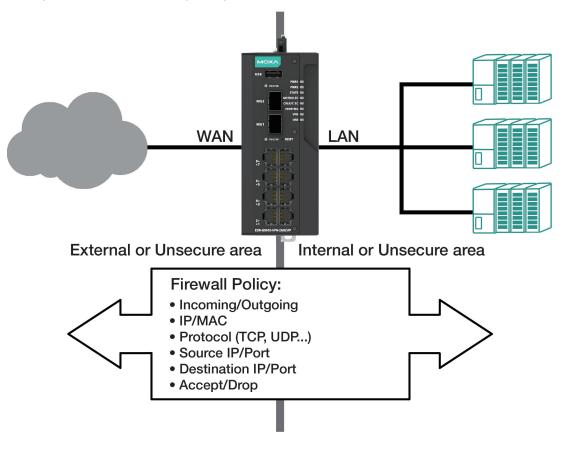
Ð			Search net	
	Name	Туре	Detail	Ref. Count
	Object-02	Network Service	Remote-Access	0
Max. 512			Items per page: 50 ▼ 1 − 1 of 1	I< < > >I

From the **Firewall** section you can configure the **Layer 2 Policy**, **Layer 3-7 Policy**, **Malformed Packets**, **Session Control**, and **DoS Policy** settings.



# **Policy Concept**

A firewall device is commonly used to provide secure traffic control over an Ethernet network, as illustrated in the following figure. Firewall devices are deployed at critical points between an external network (nonsecure) and an internal network (secure).



# **Layer 2 Policy**

The Industrial Secure Router supports advanced Layer 2 firewall policies for secure traffic control. Layer 2 firewall policies can filter packets from bridge ports and have a higher priority than L3 policies.

Ð	ţΞ				QS	Search					
		Enable	Index	Incoming Bridge Port	Outgoing Bridge Port	Ether Type	Source MAC	Destina	ation MAC	Ac	tior
	/	Enabled	1	Any BRG Members	Any BRG Members	Any	Any	Any		Ac	cep
Max. 25	6					Items p	er page: 10 👻	1 – 1 of 1	< <	>	>

# **Create a New Layer 2 Policy**

Click the 🖪 icon to create a new Layer 2 Policy.

Add Layer 2 Poli	су				
Enabled	•				
Index *					
2					
1 - 2					
Log *					
Enabled	•	Severity *	•		
Incoming Bridge Port *		Outgoing Bridge Port *			
Any	•	Any	•		
EtherType Options *					
Any	•				
Action *					
Accept	•				
Source MAC Type *					
Any	*				
Destination MAC Type *					
Any	Ŧ				
				CANCEL	CREATE

Enable		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Layer 2 policy.	Enabled
Index		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 256	The index number is generated automatically.	1

Log

209		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable firewall event logging.	Enabled

#### Severity

erency		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
<0>Emergency <1>Alert		
<1>Alert <2>Critical		
<3>Error		
<4>Warning	Select the severity of log events.	None
<5>Notice		
<6>Informational		
<7>Debug		

#### Incoming/Outgoing Bridge Port

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any BRG Members	Select the Incoming and Outgoing bridge port.	Any BRG Members

### EtherType Options

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select the Layer 2 protocol for this policy. If set to "Manual",	
Any, Manual	you can specify the EtherType. Refer to EtherType for Layer 2	Any
	Protocol for a list of all types.	

### Action

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Accept	The Firewall will accept the packet if it matches the policy.	Accept
Drop	The Firewall will drop the packet if it matches the policy.	

### Source MAC Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any	The Firewall will check all source MAC addresses of the packet.	Any
Single	The Firewall will only check the specified source MAC address of the packet.	00:00:00:00:00:00

### Destination MAC Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any	The Firewall will check all destination MAC addresses of the packet.	Any
Single	The Firewall will only check the specified destination MAC address of the packet.	00:00:00:00:00:00

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

### Modify an Existing Layer 2 Policy

Click the 🖍 icon of the entry you want to modify. When finished, click APPLY to save your changes.

### **Delete an Existing Layer 2 Policy**

Select the item(s) in the Layer 2 policy list, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and click DELETE to delete the item(s).

#### Search for a Existing Layer 2 Policy

Enter the words you want to search in the **Search** field. Anything matching the search criteria will be shown in the Layer 2 Policy list.

#### **Reorder Layer 2 Policies**

If necessary, the priority of Layer 2 policies can be changed by reordering policies. the priority of Layer 2 policy.

- 1. Click the  $\ddagger \pm icon$ .
- 2. Move the cursor to the policy you want to reorder. The cursor will change to  $^{\textcircled{}}$ .
- 3. Click and drag the policy into the desired position and release.
- 4. When finished reordering the policies, click the  $\textcircled{ extsf{ extsf extsf{ extsf} extsl} extsf{ extsf{ extsf} ex$

#### Layer 2 Policy

	-							
	Enable	Index	Incoming Bridge Port	Outgoing Bridge Port	Ether Type	Source MAC	Destination MAC	Action
■	Diggisled	1	Any BRG Members	Any BRG Members	Any	Any	Any	Drop
■	Enabled	2	Any BRG Members	Any BRG Members	Any	Any	Any	Accept
Max. 25	56				Ite	ms per page: 10 👻	1 – 2 of 2 🛛 🕹 🔨 🗸	> >

#### EtherType for Layer 2 Protocol

The following table shows the Layer 2 protocol types commonly used in Ethernet frames.

Туре	Layer 2 Protocol			
0x0800	IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4)			
0x0805	X25			
0x0806	ARP (Address Resolution Protocol)			
0×0808	Frame Relay ARP			
0x08FF	G8BPQ AX.25 Ethernet Packet			
0x6000	DEC Assigned proto			
0x6001	DEC DNA Dump/Load			
0x6002	DEC DNA Remote Console			
0x6003	DEC DNA Routing			
0x6004	DEC LAT			
0x6005	DEC Diagnostics			
0x6006	DEC Customer use			
0x6007	DEC Systems Comms Arch			
0x6558	Trans Ether Bridging			
0x6559	Raw Frame Relay			
0x80F3	Appletalk AARP			
0x809B	Appletalk			
0x8100	8021Q VLAN tagged frame			
0x8137	Novell IPX			
0x8191	NetBEUI			
0x86DD	IP version 6 (Internet Protocol version 6)			

Туре	Layer 2 Protocol
0x880B	PPP
0x884C	MultiProtocol over ATM
0x8863	PPPoE discovery messages
0x8864	PPPoE session messages
0x8884	Frame-based ATM Transport over Ethernet
0x9000	Loopback

# Layer 3 - 7 Policy

The Industrial Secure Router's Firewall policy provides secure traffic control, allowing users to control network traffic.

abled Policy Settings	Default Action Deny All	÷				
abled -	tings					
PPLY						
PPLY					Q Search	

#### Policy Global Setting

The Policy Global Setting section lets users enable and configure the default action if the traffic doesn't match any of the configured rules on the router.

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the global Policy Enforcement feature.	Disabled
Default Action		
Setting	Description	Factory Default

Setting	Description	Factory Defau
Allow All	Allow all network traffic that does not match any rule.	Deny All
Deny All	Block all network traffic that does not match any rule.	Deny Ali

#### Policy Event Global Setting

# LogFactory DefaultSettingDescriptionFactory DefaultEnabled or DisabledEnable or disable global policy event logs.Disabled

# Create a New Layer 3 - 7 Policy

Click 🖿 to create a new Layer 3 – 7 policy.

Create Layer 3-7	Poli	су				
Index *						
1						
1 - 1024	_					
Status *						
Enabled	•					
Name *						
0	/ 32					
Description						
			0 / 12	8		
Log *		Severity *		Log Destination		
Disabled	•	<4> Warning		- Local Storag	e -	
Incoming Interface *		Outgoing Interfac	e *			
Any	٠	Any		*		
Action *						
Allow						
Filter Mode *						
IP and Port Filtering		÷				
Source IP Address *						
Any		N.	0			
Source Port *						
Any		*	٠			
Destination IP Address *						
Any		-	٠			
Destination Port or Protocol Any		2	٠			
		•				
					CANCEL	CREATE

#### Index

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 1024	The index number is generated automatically.	1
Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Policy Enforcement feature.	Enabled

Name						
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Custom string (0 to 32 characters)	Enter a name for the firewall rule.	None				

#### Description

		Factory Default
Custom string (0 to 128 characters)	Enter the description for the firewall rule.	None

#### Log

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the firewall event logging.	Disabled

Severity					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
<0> Emergency					
<1> Alert					
<2> Critical					
<3> Error	Select the severity of firewall events.	<4> Warning			
<4> Warning	Select the sevency of mewall events.				
<5> Notice					
<6> Informational					
<7> Debug					

Log Destination				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Local Storage	The firewall event logs are stored on the local storage and will			
	show in the <u>Event Log</u> table.	Local Storage		
Syslog	slog The firewall event logs are sent to a Syslog server.			
Trap	The firewall event logs are sent to a SNMP Trap.			

#### Incoming Interface

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any, WAN, LAN	Select the incoming interface.	Any

#### **Outgoing Interface**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any, WAN, LAN	Select the outgoing interface.	Any

#### Action

Action			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Allow	Allow network traffic that matches this rule.	Allow	
Deny	Block network traffic that matches this rule.	Allow	

#### Filter Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP and Port Filtering	The firewall policy will filter based on IP address and port.	
IP and Source MAC	The firewall policy will filter based on IP address and check the average MAC address in the packet	ID and Port Filtoring
Binding	source MAC address in the packet.	IF and Fort Filtering
Source MAC Filtering	The firewall policy will filter based on source MAC address.	

#### Source MAC Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
MAC Address	If the Filter Mode is set to "IP and Source MAC Binding" or "Source MAC Filtering", specify the source MAC address. The firewall policy will check the source MAC address in the packet.	None

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select Any to have the firewall policy check any source IP	
Any	addresses in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the $lacksquare$	Any
	icon to Create an IP Address and Subnet Object.	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select Any to have the firewall policy check any source port	
Any	numbers in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the $lacksquare$	Any
	icon to Create a User-defined Service Object.	

# Destination IP Address Setting Description Factory Default Any Select Any to have the firewall policy check any destination IP addresses in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the I addresses in the packet or pre-defined object. Any Destination Port Description Factory Default Setting Description Factory Default Select Any to have the firewall policy check any destination Factory Default

	port numbers in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the	
Any	icon to <u>Create an IP Address and Subnet Object</u> . Refer to	Any
	Destination Port for Layer 3 – 7 Protocol for a list of all	
	destination ports.	

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.



## NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router's firewall function will check if incoming or outgoing packets match the firewall policy. It starts by checking the packet with the first policy (Index=1); if the packet matches this policy, it will accept the packet immediately and then check the next packet. If the packet does not match this policy it will check against the next policy.



## NOTE

The maximum number of Firewall policies for the Industrial Secure Router is 1024.

#### Modify an Existing Layer 3 – 7 Policy

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### Delete an Existing Layer 3 – 7 Policy

Select the item(s) in the Layer 3 – 7 policy list, click the **a** icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

#### Search for an Existing Layer 3 – 7 Policy

Enter the words you want to search in the **Search** field. Any matching the search criteria will be shown in the Layer 3 - 7 policy list table.

#### Reorder Existing Layer 3 – 7 Policy

If necessary, the priority of Layer 3 – 7 policies can be modified by reordering rules. Refer to the instructions in the <u>Reorder Layer 2 Policies</u> section.

#### **Destination Port for Layer 3 – 7 Protocol**

Network Service	Industrial Application Service
Remote-Access	Modbus
Remote-Desktop	DNP3
Email	IEC-60870-5-104
File-Transfer	IEC-61850-MMS
Web-Access	OPC-DA
Network-Service	OPC-UA
Authentication	CIP-EtherNet/IP
VOIP-and-Streaming	Siemens-Step7
SQL-Server	Moxa-RealCOM
Authentication	moxa-MXview-Request

# **Malformed Packets**

atus *			
Disabled	•		
Severity *			
Emergency	-	Log Destination	

#### **Enable Malformed Packets**

The Malformed Packets function enables the device to record event logs with a user-specified severity whenever malformed packets are dropped by the system.

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Fnanled or Disabled	Enable or disable the system to record event logs when malformed packets are dropped.	Disabled

Severity		
Severity	Description	Factory Default
Emergency	System is unusable	
Alert	Action must be taken immediately	
Critical	Critical conditions	
Error	Error conditions	Emergency
Warning	Warning conditions	Lineigency
Notice	Normal but significant condition	
Info	Informational messages	
Debug	Debug-level messages	

Log Destination		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local Storage	The malformed packets event logs are stored in the local	
Local Storage	storage and will show in the Event Log table.	Nama
Syslog	The malformed packets event logs are sent to a Syslog server.	None
Trap	The malformed packets event logs are sent by SNMP Trap.	

# **Session Control**

The Industrial Secure Router supports session control to help users protect backend hosts or services and avoid system abnormalities.

# 

## NOTE

If a TCP connection is successfully established, but no data is sent, the connection will be released after 8 seconds. If the interval between the last data transmission on the connection exceeds 300 seconds, the connection will also be released.

Session Network Host		r <b>ol</b> ce Resource Prote	ctor							
🖬 t =	Ē					Q Search				
	Index	Enforcement	Name	Destination IP	Destination Port	Total TCP Connection	Concurrent TCP Reque	st	Action	
Max. 64							0 of 0	<	< >	>1
APPLY										

#### **Create a New Session Control Policy**

Click 
Click 
Control policy.

#### **Create Session Control Policy**

Index *			
1			
1 - 64			
Status *			
Enabled			
Enabled Name *	•		
Name *	0/32		
	0/32	Log Destination Local Storage	

#### Index

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 64	The index number is generated automatically.	1
Enforcement		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the control policy rule.	Enabled
Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 32 characters	Enter a name for this policy.	None

Severity		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
<0> Emergency		
<1> Alert		
<2> Critical		
<3> Error	Coloct the coverity of the costion control event	
<4> Warning	Select the severity of the session control event.	<4> Warning
<5> Notice		
<6> Informational		
<7> Debug		

#### Log Destination

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local Storage	The session control event logs will be stored in the local	
Local Storage	storage and will show in the <u>Event Log</u> table.	Local Storage
Syslog	The session control event logs will be sent to a Syslog server.	Local Storage
Trap	The session control event logs will be sent by SNMP Trap.	

#### Action

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Monitor	Monitor the network traffic that matches this rule.	Drop
Drop	Drop the network traffic that matches this rule.	ыор

#### **TCP Destination**

#### NOTE

IP Address and Port cannot both be Any.

IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select Any to have the session control policy check any IP	
Any	addresses in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the $lacksquare$	None
	icon to Create an IP Address and Subnet Object.	
Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select Any to have the session control policy check any port	
Any	numbers in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the $lacksquare$	None

icon to Create a User-defined Service Object.

#### **TCP Connection Limitation**

TCP Connec	ction Limitatior	n* 🔒			
Total TCP C	onnection	Concurren	nt TCP Request		
1 - 65535	connections	1 - 512	connections/s		
				CANCEL	

#### N

#### NOTE

At least one limitation is required.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the total allowed number of TCP connections.	None
Concurrent TCP	Request	
<i>Concurrent TCP</i> Setting	Request	Factory Default

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## NOTE

The maximum number of session control policies is 64.

#### Modify an Existing Session Control Policy

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing Session Control Policy**

Select the item(s) in the Session Control policy list, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

#### Search for an Existing Session Control Policy

Enter the search term in the **Search** field. Anything matching the search criteria will be shown in the Session Control policy list table.

#### **Reorder Session Control Policies**

If necessary, the priority of Session Control policies can be modified by reordering rules. Refer to the instructions in the <u>Reorder Layer 2 Policies</u> section.

# **DoS (Denial of Service) Policy**

The Industrial Secure Router provides 9 different DoS functions for detecting or defining abnormal packet formats or traffic flows. The Industrial Secure Router will drop packets when it either detects an abnormal packet format or identifies unusual traffic conditions.

oS Policy				
DoS Settings				
🗆 All				
Null Scan		ICMP-Death		
🗌 Xmas Scan		Limit 1000		
NMAP-Xmas Scan		1 - 4000	pkt/s	
SYN/FIN Scan		SYN-Flood		
FIN Scan		Limit 1000		
NMAP-ID Scan		1 - 4000	pkt/s	
SYN/RST Scan		ARP-Flood		
NEW-TCP-Without-SYN Scan		Limit 1000		
		1 - 2000	pkt/s	
DoS Log Settings				
Disabled - <0> Emerg	gency	✓ Lo	og Destination	-

#### **DoS Settings**

All		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable the DoS policy for all types.	Checked
Null Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable Null Scan.	Checked
Xmas Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable Xmas Scan.	Checked
NMAP-Xmas Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable NMAP-Xmas Scan.	Checked
SYN/FIN Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable SYN/FIN Scan.	Checked
FIN Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable FIN Scan.	Checked

NMAP-ID Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable NMAP-ID Scan.	Checked
SYN/RST Scan		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable SYN/RST Scan.	Checked

#### NEW-TCP-Without-SYN Scan

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable NEW-TCP-Without-SYN Scan.	Checked

#### ICMP-Death

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable the ICMP-Death protection.	Checked
Limit (1 to 4000	If enabled, specify the limit that will trigger ICMP-Death	1000
Packets/Second)	protection.	1000

#### SYN-Flood

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable SYN-Flood protection.	Checked
Limit (1 to 4000 Packets/Second)	If enabled, specify the limit that will trigger SYN-Flood protection.	1000

#### ARP-Flood

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable ARP-Flood protection	Checked
Limit (1 to 2000	If enabled, specify the limit that will trigger ARP-Flood	1000
Packets/Second)	protection.	1000

#### **DoS Log Settings**

Log		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable DoS event logs.	Disabled

#### Severitv

Setting	Description	Factory Default
<0> Emergency		
<1> Alert		
<2> Critical		
<3> Error	Calast the severity of DeC events	
<4> Warning	Select the severity of DoS events.	<0> Emergency
<5> Notice		
<6> Informational		
<7> Debug		

#### Log Destination

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local Storage	The DoS event logs are stored in the local storage and will	
Local Storage	show in the <u>Event Log</u> table.	Disabled
Syslog	The DoS event logs are sent to a Syslog server.	Disabled
Trap	The DoS event logs are sent by SNMP Trap.	

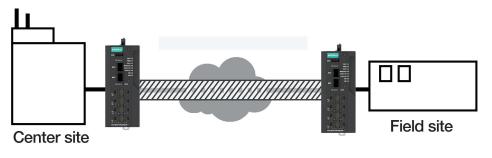
When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

From the **VPN** section, you can configure **IPSec** settings.



# Overview

In this section we describe how to use the Industrial Secure Router to build a secure remote automation network with the VPN (Virtual Private Network) feature. A VPN provides a highly cost-effective solution for establishing secure communication tunnels so that data can be exchanged safely.





There are two common applications for secure remote communication in an industrial automation network:

#### **IPsec (Internet Protocol Security) VPN for LAN-to-LAN Security**

IPsec is often used for data communication between two different LAN segments that is limited to a predefined IP range.

IPsec uses the IKE (Internet Key Exchange) protocol for Authentication, Key exchange and provides a way for the VPN gateway data to be protected by different encryption methods.

There are 2 phases for IKE when negotiating the IPsec connections between 2 VPN gateways:

**Key Exchange (IPsec Phase 1):** The 2 VPN gateways will negotiate how IKE should be protected. Phase 1 will also authenticate the two VPN gateways by the matched Pre-Shared Key or X.509 Certificate.

**Data Exchange (IPsec Phase 2):** In Phase 2, the VPN gateways negotiate to determine additional IPsec connection details, which include the data encryption algorithm.

# **IPsec Configuration**

IPsec configuration consists of 5 parts:

- Global Setting: Enable or disable all IPsec tunnels and NAT-Traversal (NAT-T) functionality
- Tunnel Setting: Set up the VPN connection type and the VPN network plan
- Key Exchange: Authentication for 2 VPN gateways
- Data Exchange: Data encryption between VPN gateways
- Dead Peer Detection: The mechanism for VPN Tunnel maintenance

## **Global Settings**

Global Settings	IPSec Settings	IPSec Status
Status *		
Disabled	*	
PSec NAT-T *		
Disabled	•	
/PN Event Log *		
Disabled	*	
Log Destination	*	

The Industrial Secure Router provides 3 Global Settings for IPsec VPN applications.

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable all IPsec VPN services.	Disabled

#### NOTE

IPsec VPN is disabled by default. Make sure to enable this option if you want to use the IPsec function.

IPsec NAT-T		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable IPsec NAT-T (NAT-Traversal). This option should be enabled if there an external Industrial Secure Router located between VPN tunnels.	Disabled
VPN Event Log		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable event log.	Disabled

Severity		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Log severity	everity If VPN Event Log is enabled, select the severity for the VPN event logs.	
Log Destination		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local Storage, Syslog,	If VPN Event Log is enabled, select the VPN event log storage	Disabled
Trap	location.	DISADIEU

## **IPsec Settings**

Sec Global Settings	IPSec Settings	IPSec Status		
		-	earch	
State	us Name	Remote VPN Gateway	Local Network	Remote Network
Max. 250			Items per page: 50 💌	0 of 0  < < >

#### **Create an IPsec Entry**

Click the conto create a new IPsec entry. IPsec supports two types of settings. Refer to the <u>IPsec Quick</u> <u>Settings</u> and <u>Advanced Settings</u> sections for more information.

#### **IPsec Quick Settings**

The Industrial Secure Router's **Quick Settings** mode can be used to easily set up a site-to-site VPN tunnel between two Industrial Secure Router units.

Create IPSec	
Settings Quick Settings	Advanced Settings
	0

When choosing the Quick Settings mode, the user just needs to configure the following:

- Tunnel Settings
- Remote Network List

Click the 🖬 icon to configure the remote VPN network.

- > Remote Network: The IP address of the remote VPN network.
- > Netmask: The netmask of the remote VPN network.
- Security Settings
  - > Encryption Strength: Simple (AES-128), Standard (AES-192), or Strong (AES-256)
  - > Authentication Mode: Pre-shared Key, X.509, or X.509 With CA
  - > Pre-shared Key: The password of Pre-Shared Key

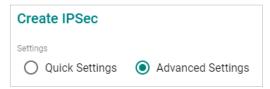
Tunnel Settings Status *					
Enabled	*	Name *			
				0/31	
VPN Connection *					
Site to Site	•	Remote VPN Gateway *			
Remote Network L	.ist				
- +					
Required					
Max. 10			0 of 0	< <	> >
Security Settings					
O Simple	O s	tandard 🧿 Strong			
Authentication Mode *					
Pre-shared Key	-	Pre-shared Key *			
		0 / 64			

#### NOTE

The Encryption Strength, Authentication Mode, and Pre-Shared Key configuration should be identical for both Industrial Secure Router units.

#### **IPsec Advanced Settings**

Select **Advanced Settings** to manually configure the full range of VPN settings.



#### **Tunnel Settings**

Tunnel Settings Status *				
Enabled	-	Name *		
				0/31
VPN Connection *			Startup Mode *	
Site to Site	-	Remote VPN Gateway *	Start in initial	-

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the VPN tunnel.	Enabled
Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Enter a name for this VPN tunnel.	None

#### NOTE

The name cannot start with a number.

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Site to Site	The VPN tunnel for the Local and Remote subnets is fixed.		
Site to Site(Any)	The VPN tunnel for the Remote subnet area is dynamic and is	Site to Site	
Site to Site(Ally)	fixed for the Local subnet.		
Remote VPN Gatew	ау		
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
IP Address Specify the IP address of the remote VPN gateway.		None	
Startup Mode			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Start in Initial	The VPN tunnel will actively initiate the connection with the remote VPN gateway.	– Start in Initial	
Wait for Connecting	The VPN tunnel will wait for the remote VPN gateway to initiate the connection.		

#### NOTE

The maximum number of **Starts** in the initial VPN tunnel is 30. The maximum number of **Waits** for connecting to a VPN tunnel is 100. This cannot be changed.

#### Local Network List

Loo	cal Network List								
	+ Local Network * 192.168.127.254	Netmask * 24 (255.255.255.0)	*						
	Max. 10			1 – 1 of 1	<	<	>	>	

#### Local Network/Netmask

Setting	Description	Factory Default			
	Specify the IP address and subnet mask of the local VPN				
	network. Users can configure multiple local networks to create				
IP Address	an IPsec connection to the remote network.	192.168.127.254/			
(max. 10 local VPN	For example, if the user configures two local networks	24 (255.255.255.0)			
networks)	(192.168.127.254/24 and 192.168.126.254/24), these two	24 (233.233.233.0)			
	networks will build an IPsec connection to the remote				
	network.				

#### **Remote Network List**

Click the 🖿 icon to configure the remote VPN network.

Remote Network Lis	t							
- <b>F</b>								
Remote Networ	k *	Netmask * 24 (255.255.255.0)	*					
Max. 10				1 - 1 of 1	<	<	>	>
Identity Type * IP Address	•	Local ID		Remote ID				
			0/31			0 /	31	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address (max. 10 remote VPN network)	Specify the IP address and subnet mask of the remote VPN network. Users can configure multiple remote networks to create an IPsec connection to the local network. For example, if the user configures two remote networks (10.10.100.254/24 and 10.10.110.254/24), these two networks will build an IPsec connection to the local network.	None/ 24 (255.255.255.0)

#### Identity

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Туре	Select an ID type. There are four ID types: IP address, FQDN, Key ID, and Auto(with Cisco). Key ID is a user-defined string. Auto(with Cisco) is for used establishing connections to Cisco systems.	IP address
Local ID (max. 31 characters)	Specify the local ID for identifying the VPN tunnel connection. The Local ID must be identical to the Remote ID of the connected VPN gateway in order to successfully establish the VPN tunnel connection.	None
Remote ID (max. 31 characters)	Specify the remote ID for identifying the VPN tunnel connection. The Remote ID must be identical to the Local ID of the connected VPN gateway in order to successfully establish the VPN tunnel connection.	None

#### Key Exchange (Phase 1)

Key Exchange (Phas IKE Mode *	e 1)	IKE Version *	
Main	•	IKE2	Ψ
Authentication Mode *			
Pre-shared Key	-	Pre-shared Key *	
			0/64
Encryption Algorithm *		Hash Algorithm *	
AES-256	*	SHA-256	*
D11 0 *			
DH Group *			
DH 14 (modp2048)			
IKE Life Time *			
43200			
30 - 43200	min.		

#### IKE Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	In 'Main' IKE Mode, both the Remote and Local VPN gateway will negotiate which Encryption/Hash algorithm and DH groups can be used for this VPN tunnel. Both VPN gateways must use the same algorithm to communicate.	Main
Aggressive	In "Aggressive" Mode, the Remote and Local VPN gateway will not negotiate the algorithm and will only use the user-defined configuration.	

#### IKE Version

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IKE1	Use the IKE Version 1 protocol	IKE2
IKE2	Use the IKE Version 2 protocol	INLZ

#### Authentication Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Pre-Shared Key	Pre-Shared Key is a user-defined authentication string used by	Pro-Sharod Kov	
Fle-Shaled Key	two systems to establish an IPsec VPN connection.		
	In this mode, two systems authenticate the VPN connection		
X.509	using certificates imported in advance by the user on the Local	Nama	
X.509	Certificate page. Refer to User Scenario 1 and 2 in the IPsec	None	
	Use Case Demonstration section for more details.		
	In this mode, two systems authenticate the VPN connection		
	using certificates imported in advance by the user on the Local		
X.509 With CA	Certificate page and a CA certificate imported on the Trusted	None	
	CA Certificate page. Refer to User Scenario 3, 4, and 5 in the		
	IPsec Use Case Demonstration section for more details.		

#### NOTE

Certificates are a time-based form of authentication. Before processing certificates, please ensure that the industrial secure router is synced with the local device. For more information about syncing device time, please refer to the <u>Time</u> section.

Encryption Algorithm		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
DES		
3DES		
AES-128	Select the encryption algorithm for Key Exchange.	AES-256
AES-192		
AES-256		

#### Hash Algorithm

Setting	Description	Factory Default
MD5		
SHA-1	Select the encryption algorithm for Key Exchange.	SHA-256
SHA-256		

DH Group		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
DH 1(modp768)		
DH 2(modp1024)	Select the Diffie-Hellman group. This is the Key Exchange	$D \parallel 14 (mod n 2048)$
DH 5(modp1536)	group between the remote and VPN gateways.	DH 14(modp2048)
DH 14(modp2048)		

#### SA Lifetime

Setting	Description	Factory Default
30 to 43200 (minutes)	Specify the lifetime (in minutes) for IKE SA.	43200 (minutes)

#### Data Exchange (Phase 2)

Data Exchange (Phas Encryption Algorithm *	se 2)	Hash Algorithm *	
AES-256	•	SHA-256	•
Perfect Forward Secrecy *		DH Group *	
Disabled	-	DH 14 (modp2048)	-
SA Life Time *			
43200			
30 - 43200	min.		

#### Encryption Algorithm

Setting	Description	Factory Default
DES		
3DES		
AES-128	Select the encryption algorithm for data exchange	AES-256
AES-192		
AES-256		

#### Hash Algorithm

Setting	Description	Factory Default
MD5		
SHA-1	Select the Hash Algorithm for data exchange.	SHA-256
SHA-256		

#### Perfect Forward Secrecy

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Perfect Forward Secrecy. When enabled, different security keys are used for different IPsec phases in order to enhance security.	Disabled

DH Group					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
DH 1 (modp768)					
DH 2 (modp1024)	Select the Diffie-Hellman group. This is the Key Exchange	DU 14 (mod = 2040)			
DH 5 (modp1536)	group between the remote and VPN gateways.	DH 14 (modp2048)			
DH 14 (modp2048)					
	j				

#### SA Lifetime

Setting	Description	Factory Default
30 to 43200 (minutes)	Specify the lifetime (in minutes) for Phase 2 IKE SA.	43200 (minutes)

#### **Dead Peer Detection**

Dead Peer Detection is a mechanism to detect whether the connection between a local secure router and a remote IPsec tunnel has been lost.

Dead Peer Detection Action *			
Restart	•		
Retry Interval *		Confindence Interval *	
30		120	
0-3600	sec.	0 - 3600	sec

#### Action

The action the system will take when a dead peer is detected.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Hold	Maintain the VPN tunnel.	
Restart	Reconnect the VPN tunnel.	Restart
Clear	Clear the VPN tunnel.	Restart
Disabled	Disable Dead Peer Detection.	

Retry Interval		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 3600 (seconds)	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which Dead Peer Detection	30 (seconds)
0 to 5000 (seconds)	messages are sent.	

#### Confidence Interval

Setting Description		Factory Default
	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which the system will check if the connection is alive or not.	120 (seconds)

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## Modify an Existing IPsec Entry

Select the item in the IPsec VPN List and click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing IPsec Entry**

Select the item(s) in the IPsec VPN List. Click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

# **IPsec Use Case Demonstration**

In the following section, we will consider five common user scenarios. The purpose of each example is to give a clearer understanding of two authentication modes 'X.509' and 'X.509 with CA'.

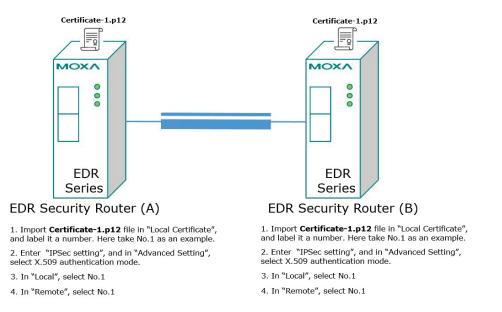


# NOTE

Certificates are a time-based form of authentication. Before processing certificates, please ensure that the industrial secure router is synced with the local device. For more information about syncing device time, please refer to the <u>Time</u> section.

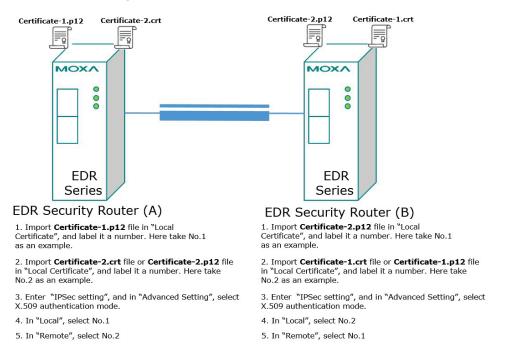
#### Scenario 1: X.509 Mode-One Certificate

Users will sometimes use certificates generated from a server or from the Internet. If users only get one certificate, they can import this certificate into a system. This system can then use the same certificate to identify other certificates and establish a VPN connection. In this case, users have to import certificates (.p12) into both systems. Refer to the instructions in the diagram below to learn how to install certificates and build an IPsec VPN connection.



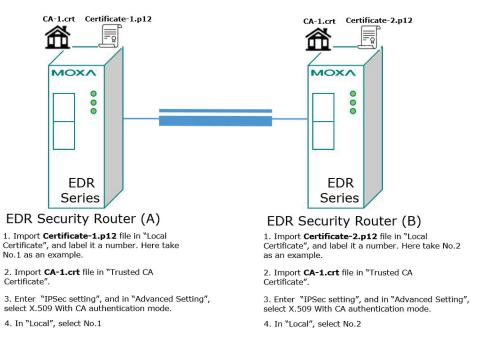
#### Scenario 2: X.509 Mode-Two Certificates

Users will sometimes use certificates generated from a server or from the Internet. If users get different certificates for different systems, users can import these certificates into the systems accordingly. However, systems require all of these certificates to identify trusted systems before establishing a IPsec VPN connection. Take the following two systems as an example: System A has certificate-1 (.p12) and System B has certificate-2 (.p12). To establish an IPsec VPN connection, System A and B have to exchange certificates (.crt) with each other. Next, Systems A and B need to install certificates (.crt). Refer to the instructions in the diagram below to learn how to install certificates and build an IPsec VPN connection.



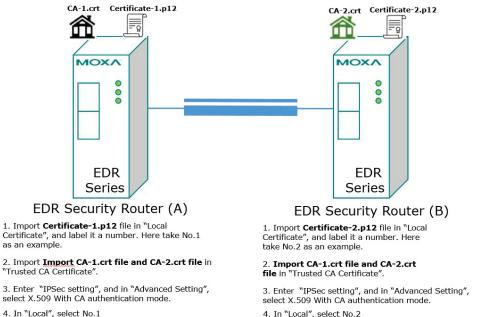
#### Scenario 3: X.509 with CA Mode-One CA

In X.509 mode, users have to install all certificates in all systems. To simplify this process, users can obtain the certificate from the CA (Certificate Authority). When using certificates from the CA, each system needs to install the same CA (.crt) to allow each system to identify different certificates from different systems. Every certificate must be issued by the same CA. Refer to the instructions in the diagram below to learn how to install the CA and build an IPsec VPN connection.



#### Scenario 4: X.509 with CA Mode-Two CAs

In some large-scale systems, users may find it difficult to get certificates from one CA and therefore need to get certificates from different CAs. This scenario applies to the X.509 CA mode. Users have to install all CAs (.crt) into all systems to enable every system to recognize certificates from different CAs and subsequently allow identification of all the different systems. Refer to the instructions in the diagram below to learn how to install the CA (.crt) and certificates (.p12) to build an IPsec VPN or OpenVPN connection.



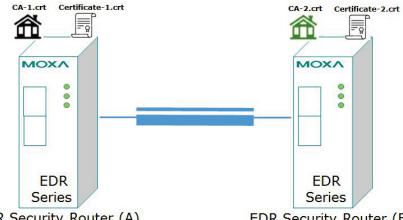
4. In "Local", select No.2

#### Scenario 5: X.509 with CA Mode-Certificate from CSR

For the previous four user scenarios, even when systems use certificates to identify each other before establishing a VPN connection, there is still a risk that someone can steal the certificate and pretend to be part of the trusted system.

The Certificate Signing Request (CSR) function in X.509 with CA mode is designed to minimize this risk. CSR is a request issued by a single system for certificates issued by the CA. Through CSR, the certificate belongs only to one system and cannot be installed on other systems. By following this method, CSR significantly reduces the risk of certificates being used illegitimately.

Consider the following example using System A and System B. The CSR working model is System A or B issues a CSR (.csr) to the CA and then the CA updates the system with the certificate (.crt) and the CA file (.crt). Next, System A or B updates the other system with the CA file (.crt). System A or B installs certificates and the CA file in the system in order to establish a VPN connection. Refer to the instructions in the diagram below to learn how to install the CA (.crt) and certificates (.crt) to build an IPsec VPN or OpenVPN connection.



#### EDR Security Router (A)

1. Generate Key in "Key Pair Generate", and give it a name. Here take One as an example.

2. Generate CSR in "CSR Generate". Select One in "Private Key". Name this CSR in "Common Name". Here name this CSR as Certificate-1 as an example.

3. Export Certificate-1.csr file and send it to CA-1.

4. Download Certificate-1.crt and CA-1.crt from CA-1.

5. Import **Certificate-1.crt** file in "Local Certificate. In "Import Identity Certificate" select "Certificate From CSR". In "CSR Common Name" select Certificate-1.csr.

6. Import CA-2.crt file in "Trusted CA Certificate.

7. Enter "IPSec setting", and in "Advanced Setting", select X.509 With CA authentication mode.

8. In "Local", select No.1

#### EDR Security Router (B)

1. Generate Key in "Key Pair Generate", and give it a name. Here take Two as an example.

2. Generate CSR in "CSR Generate". Select Two in "Private Key". Name this CSR in "Common Name" Here name this CSR as Certificate-2 as an example.

3. Export Certificate-2.csr file and send it to CA-2.

4. Download Certificate-2.crt and CA-2.crt from CA-1.

5. Import Certificate-2.crt file in "Local Certificate. In "Import Identity Certificate" select "Certificate From CSR". In "CSR Common Name" select Certificate-2.csr.

Import CA-1.crt file in "Trusted CA Certificate.

7. Enter "IPSec setting", and in "Advanced Setting", select X.509 With CA authentication mode.

8. In "Local", select No.2

## **IPsec Status**

From the **IPsec Status** table, users can check the VPN tunnel status.

This list shows the name of the IPsec tunnel, the IP address of the Local and Remote Network/Gateway, and the status of the Key Exchange and Data Exchange phases.

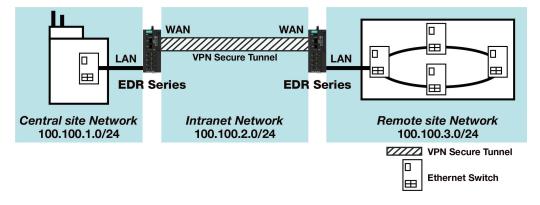
Global Settings	IPSec Settings	IPSe	ec Status					
c				<b>Q</b> Search				
				Domoto	Key Exchange	Data Exc	hange	Tim
Name	Local Network	Local Gateway	Remote Network	Remote Gateway	(Phase 1)	(Phase		П

Click the  $\mathbf{C}$  icon to refresh the information.

# **Examples of Typical VPN Applications**

# Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Pre-Shared Key

The following example shows how to create a secure LAN-to-LAN VPN tunnel between a Central and Remote site via an intranet network.



#### **VPN Plan**

- All communication from the Central site network (100.100.1.0/24) to the Remote site Network (100.100.3.0/24) needs to pass through the VPN tunnel.
- The Intranet Network is 100.100.2.0/24.
- The configuration of the WAN/LAN interface for the 2 Industrial Secure Routers is shown in the following table.

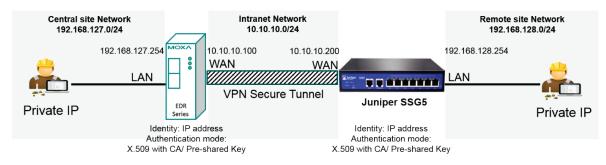
	Configuration	Industrial Secure Router (1)	Industrial Secure Router (2)
Interface Setting	WAN IP	100.100.2.1	100.100.2.2
Interface Setting	LAN IP	100.100.1.1	100.100.3.1

Based on the requirements and VPN plan, the recommended configuration for the IPsec VPN connection is shown in the following table:

	Configuration	Industrial Secure Router (1)	Industrial Secure Router (2)
	Connection Type	Site to Site	Site to Site
	Remote VPN gateway	100.100.2.2	100.100.2.1
Tunnol Sotting	l Setting Startup mode Local Network/	Wait for Connection	Start in Initial
Turiner Setting		100.100.1.0/	100.100.3.0/
	Netmask	255.255.255.0	25.255.255.0
	Remote Network/	100.100.3.0/	100.100.1.0/
	Netmask	25.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
Key Exchange	Pre-Shared Key	12345	12345
Data Exchange	Encryption/Harsh	3DES/SHA-1	3DES/SHA-1

# Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Juniper systems

In this example, in order to establish a VPN tunnel, the central site router and remote site router have to know the identity of each other and use the same authentication mechanism to verify each other. Here we use a Juniper SSG5 as an example to elaborate how the Industrial Secure Router can build an IPsec VPN connection with Juniper systems.



#### **VPN Plan**

- All communication from the Central site network (192.168.127.0/24) to the Remote site Network (192.168.128.0/24) needs to pass through the VPN tunnel.
- The Intranet Network is 10.10.10.0/24.
- The configuration of the WAN/LAN interface for the Industrial Secure Routers and Juniper SSG5 is shown in the following table.

	Configuration	Industrial Secure Router	Juniper SSG5
Router Setting	WAN IP	10.10.10.100	10.10.10.200
Router Setting	LAN IP	192.168.127.254	192.168.128.254

Based on the requirements and VPN plan, the recommended configuration for the IPsec VPN connection is shown in the following table:

	Configuration	Industrial Secure Router	Juniper SSG5
	Connection Type	Site to Site	Site to Site
	Remote VPN gateway	10.10.10.200	10.10.10.100
	Startup mode	Wait for Connection	Start in Initial
	Local Network/	192.168.127.0/	192.168.128.0/
Tunnel Setting	Netmask	255.255.255.0	25.255.255.0
Turiner Setting	Remote Network/	192.168.128.0/	192.168.127.0/
	Netmask	25.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
		IP address	IP address
	Identity	Local ID: 10.10.10.100	Local ID: 10.10.10.200
		Remote ID: 10.10.10.200	Remote ID: 10.10.10.100
Koy Eychango	Authentication mode	Pre-Shared Key or X.509 with	Pre-Shared Key or X.509 with
Key Exchange	Authentication mode	CA	CA
Data Exchange	Encryption / Harsh	3DES/SHA-1	3DES/SHA-1

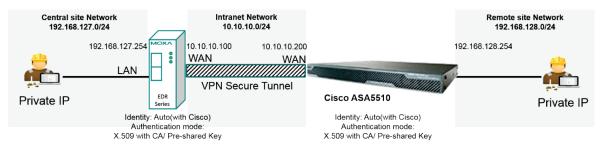
Note that to establish a VPN connection with Juniper systems, the Identity should set to **"IP Address**" and the authentication mode should set to **"Pre-Shared Key**" or **"X.509 with CA**". During the Industrial Secure Router compliance test with the Juniper SSG5, all Identity modes except "IP Address" and all authentication modes except **"X.509 with CA**" did not work with the Juniper SSG5. A summary of settings for VPN connections with Juniper systems is listed in the table below.

settings for compatibility with		Authentication m	Authentication mode		
		Pre-shared Key	X.509	X.509 With CA	
	IP Address	Supported	Not supported	Supported	
Tdontity	FQDN				
Identity	Key ID	Not supported	Not supported		
	Auto(with Cisco)				

# Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Cisco systems

To build up a VPN tunnel, the central site router and remote site router have to know the identity of each other and use the same authentication mechanism to verify each other. Here we take Cisco's ASA5510 as example to elaborate how the Industrial Secure Router builds an IPsec VPN connection with Cisco systems.

In this example, in order to establish a VPN tunnel, the central site router and remote site router have to know the identity of each other and use the same authentication mechanism to verify each other. Here we use a Cisco ASA5510 as an example to elaborate how the Industrial Secure Router can build an IPsec VPN connection with Cisco systems.



#### **VPN Plan**

- All communication from the Central site network (192.168.127.0/24) to the Remote site Network (192.168.128.0/24) needs to pass through the VPN tunnel.
- The Intranet Network is 10.10.10.0/24
- The configuration of the WAN/LAN interface for the Industrial Secure Routers and Cisco ASA5510 is shown in the following table:

	Configuration	Moxa Industrial Secure Router	Cisco ASA5510
	WAN IP	10.10.10.100	10.10.10.200
Router Setting	LAN IP	192.168.127.254	192.168.128.254

Based on the requirements and VPN plan, the recommended configuration for the IPsec VPN connection is shown in the following table:

	Configuration	Moxa Industrial Secure Router	Cisco ASA5510
	Connection Type	Site to Site	Site to Site
	Remote VPN gateway	10.10.10.200	10.10.10.100
	Startup mode	Wait for Connection	Start in Initial
Tunnel Setting	Local Network /	192.168.127.0/	192.168.128.0/
Turiner Setting	Netmask	255.255.255.0	25.255.255.0
	Remote Network /	192.168.128.0/	192.168.127.0/
	Netmask	25.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
	Identity	Auto(with Cisco)	
	Authentication mode	Pre-Shared Key or X.509 With	Pre-Shared Key or X.509 With
Key Exchange	Authentication mode	CA	СА
Data Exchange	Encryption/Harsh	3DES/SHA-1	3DES/SHA-1

Note that when establishing a VPN connection with Cisco systems, all authentication modes except "X.509" are supported.

When using Pre-shared Key authentication, the Identity can be set to "**IP Address**", "**FQDN**", "**Key ID**", or "**Auto (with Cisco)**". When using X.509 with CA authentication, the Identity must be set to "**Auto (with Cisco)**".

To simplify the VPN configuration, the Industrial Secure Router supports an identity called **"Auto(with Cisco)"** which can be used alongside Pre-shared Key and X.509 with CA authentication.

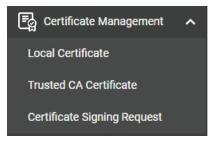
A summary of settings for VPN connections with Cisco systems is listed in the table below.

Settings for compatibility with Cisco systems		Authentication mo	Authentication mode		
		Pre-shared Key	X.509	X.509 With CA	
	IP Address	Supported			
Identity –	FQDN	Supported	Not supported	Not supported	
	Key ID	Supported	Not supported		
	Auto(with Cisco)	Supported		Supported	

For the purposes of this document, certificate management refers to the X.509 SSL certificate. X.509 is a digital certificate method commonly used for IPsec, OpenVPN, and HTTPS authentication. The Industrial Secure Router can act as a Root CA (Certificate Authority) and issue a trusted Root Certificate. Alternatively, users can import certificates from other CAs into the Industrial Secure Router.

Certificates are a time-based form of authentication. Before processing certificates, please ensure that the industrial secure router is synced with the local device. For more information about syncing device time, please refer to the <u>Time</u> section.

From the **Certificate Management** section, you can configure **Local Certificate**, **Trusted CA Certificate**, and **Certificate Signing Request** settings.





## ΝΟΤΕ

For security reasons, if the device is deployed without a CA server environment, we strongly recommend using short lifetime certificates (e.g., 24 hours) to ensure system security.

# **Local Certificate**

From the **Local Certificates** screen, users can import certificates issued by the CA into the Industrial Secure Router.

Depending on the selected certificate, some settings may differ. Refer to the following sections: <u>Import a Certificate</u> <u>Import a Certificate From CSR</u>

Import a Certificate from PKCS#12

Ð				
Label	Issued To	Issued By	Expiration Date	
Max. 10				0 of 0

# **Import a Certificate**

Label     Issued To     Issued By     Expiration Date	Local Certific	ate			
Label Issued To Issued By Expiration Date					
Max. 10 0 of 0	Label	Issued To	Issued By	Expiration Date	

#### Click the 🛨 icon to add a certificate.

Generate Certificate	
Import Identity Certifi	
Label	
0/30	
Select Certificate *	
	CANCEL UPGRADE

#### Import Identity Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Certificate,		
Certificate from CSR,	Calast Castificate as the castificate true.	Castificate
Certificate from	Select Certificate as the certificate type.	Certificate
PKCS#12		

#### Label

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 30	Specify the certification number.	None

#### Select Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Upload a certificate from the local computer.	
Click the 🗖 icon to	Certificate uses the .crt file extension.	None
select a certificate file	<b>Certificate from CSR</b> is a certificate issued by another CA.	None
	Certificate from PKCS#12 uses the .p12 file extension.	

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{UPGRADE}}$  to import the selected certificate.

# **Import a Certificate From CSR**

When importing a Certificate From CSR, you must browse to the certificate file before selecting the CSR Common Name.

Local Certific	ate			
8				
🗌 Label	Issued To	Issued By	Expiration Date	
Max. 10				0 of 0

#### Click the 🖬 icon to add a certificate.

Generate Certificate		
Import Identity Certificate Certificate From CSR 🔹		
Label		
0 / 30 CSR Common Name * ╺		
Select Certificate *		
	CANCEL	UPGRADE

#### Import Identity Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Certificate,		
Certificate from CSR,	Calast Castificate Frame CCD as the castificate true	Certificate
Certificate from	Select <b>Certificate From CSR</b> as the certificate type.	Certificate
PKCS#12		

LabelFactory DefaultSettingDescription0 to 30Specify the certification number.None

#### CSR Common Name

Description	Factory Default	
Select the CSR Common Name. This is the domain name the	None	
certificate will apply to.	None	
	Select the CSR Common Name. This is the domain name the	

#### Select Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
	Upload a certificate from the local computer.		
Click the 🗖 icon to	Certificate uses the .crt file extension.	Nama	
select a certificate file	<b>Certificate from CSR</b> is a certificate issued by another CA.	None	
	Certificate from PKCS#12 uses the .p12 file extension.		

When finished, click **UPGRADE** to import the selected certificate.

# Import a Certificate from PKCS#12

When importing the Certificate from PKCS#12, you must browse to the certificate file before entering the Import Password.

L	ocal Certific	ate			
Γ.	0				
	Label	Issued To	Issued By	Expiration Date	
	Max. 10				0 of 0

#### Click the 🖬 icon to add a certificate.

Generate Certificate		
Import Identity Certificate Certificate From PKC 👻		
Label		
Import Password *		
0 / 32 Select Certificate *		
	CANCEL	UPGRADE

#### Import Identity Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Certificate,		
Certificate from CSR,		Castificate
Certificate from	Select <b>Certificate From PKCS#12</b> as the certificate type.	Certificate
PKCS#12		

Label		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 30	Specify the certification number.	None

#### Import Password

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 32 characters	Enter the import password.	None

#### Select Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
	Upload a certificate from the local computer.		
Click the 🗖 icon to	Certificate uses the .crt file extension.	News	
select a certificate file	<b>Certificate from CSR</b> is a certificate issued by another CA.	None	
	Certificate from PKCS#12 uses the .p12 file extension.		

When finished, click **UPGRADE** to import the selected certificate.

# **Trusted CA Certificate**

# **Import a CA Certificate**

From the **Trusted CA Certificate** screen, users can import a trusted CA into the Industrial Secure Router. It is recommended that the user imports a trusted CA in advance. Otherwise, the Industrial Secure Router may not recognize the certificate and reject the connection.

#### **Trusted CA Certificate**

0		
Name	Subject	
Max. 10		0 of 0

Click the 🖬 icon to add a CA Certificate.

Generate CA Certificate		
Select CA Certificate *		
	CANCEL	UPGRADE

Click the 🗖 icon to select a CA certificate file, then click **UPGRADE** to import the certificate.

# **Certificate Signing Request**

From the Certificate Signing Request screen, users can generate key pairs and the CSR.

Certificate Si	gning Reques	
Key Pair Generate	CSR Generate	
٥		Q Search
Name	Key Pair Size	
Max. 10		0 of 0

To get a certificate from the CA for connection purposes, users must follow the two-step process below. <u>Step 1: Generate a Private Key</u> <u>Step 2: Generate the CSR</u>

# **Key Pair Generate**

#### Step 1: Generate a Private Key

Before sending the Certificate Signing Request (CSR) to the CA, the CSR must include a public key that can be generated together with a private key. The user can use the private key to encrypt data while the receiver can use the public key to decrypt the data.

## **Certificate Signing Request**

Key Pair Generate	CSR Generate		
Đ		Q Search	
Name	Key Pair Size		
Max. 10			0 of 0

Click the 🖬 icon to generate a RSA key.

Generate RSA	Кеу			
Name *				
	0/30			
Key Pair Size *	Ŧ			
		C	ANCEL	GENE

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 30 characters	Enter a name for the RSA key.	None

Key Pair Size

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1024 Bit or 2048 Bit	Select the key pair size of each private key.	None

When finished, click **GENERATE** to generate the RSA key.

To delete the RSA key, select the RSA key in the RSA key List and click the **DELETE** to delete the RSA key.

# **CSR Generate**

## Step 2: Generate the CSR

Certificate Sig	Certificate Signing Request				
Key Pair Generate	CSR Generate				
٥		Q Search			
Name	Subject				
Max. 10			0 of 0		

After generating the private key, click the 🖿 icon to generate the CSR.

Generate Certificate	Signing Request	
Private Key * 🔹		
Country Name (2 letter	Locality Name *	
At least 2 characters 0 / 2	0 / 16	
Organization Name *	Organizational Unit Na	
0/16	0 / 16	
Common Name *	Email Address *	
0/16	0 / 64	
Subject Alternative Na		
0/16		
	CANCEL	GENERATE

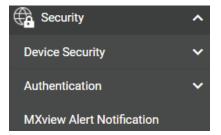
Private Key		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Private Key	Select the private key generated on the Key Pair Generate tab. If you have not generated a private key yet, refer to <u>Step 1: Generate a Private Key</u> .	None
Country Name (2 let	ter code)	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
At least 2 characters	Enter the country code for the CSR.	None
Locality Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 16 characters	Enter the locality name for the CSR.	None

Organization Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 16 characters	Enter the organization name for the CSR.	None
Organization Unit Na	ame	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 16 characters	Enter the organization unit name for the CSR.	None
Common Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 16 characters	Enter the common name for the CSR.	None
Email Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 64 characters	Enter the email address for the CSR.	None
Subject Alternative	Name	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 16 characters	Enter the subject alternative name for the CSR.	None

When finished, click **GENERATE** to generate the CSR.

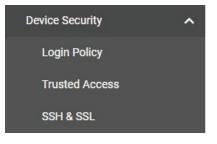
To delete the CSR, select the CSR in Certificate List and click the **i** icon, then click **DELETE** to delete the CSR.

From the **Security** section, you can configure **Device Security**, **Authentication**, and **MXview Alert Notification** settings.



# **Device Security**

From the **Device Security** section, the following functions can be configured: **Login Policy**, **Trusted Access**, and **SSH & SSL**.



# **Login Policy**

Login Policy			
Login Message			
			0 / 512
Login Authenticatior	n Failure	e Message	
			0 / 512
Login Failure Account Lock Disabled	cout T		
Login Failure Retry Thresho	bld *		
1 - 10 times			
Lockout Duration * 5			
	min		
Auto Logout After *			
5			
0 - 1440	min		
APPLY			

#### Login Message

Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Max. 512 characters	Enter a welcome message that will appear when users log in to the device.	None		
Login Authentication Failure Message				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		

Setting	Description	Factor
Max. 512 characters	Enter the message that will appear if the user failed to log in.	None

# Note

The Login Authentication Failure Message should not include any password or other sensitive information.

Login Failure Account Lockout				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the lockout function which will temporarily prevent users from logging in after several failed login attempts.	Disabled		
Login Failure Retry Threshold				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
1 to 10 times	Specify the number of login retry attempts before the user is locked out.	5		
Lockout Duration				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
1 to 10 minutes	Specify the lockout duration (in minutes). During this time, the locked-out user will be unable to log in.	5		

# The Login Authent

Auto Logout After Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 1440 minutes	When the user is idle for the specified duration, the user will be automatically logged out from the device. The default duration is 5 minutes.	0

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Trusted Access**

The Industrial Secure Router uses an IP address-based filtering method to control access to the device.

# **Trusted Access**

Trusted IP List (Dis Enabled	abling this wil	II allow all IP	connections)	<b>*</b>		
Accept All LAN Por Enabled	t Connections	3		Ŧ		
Log Disabled APPLY	-	Severit		✓ Log Des	tination 👻	
<b>₽</b> 1Ξ					Q, Search	
	Index	Status	IP Address	Netmask		
Max. 10						0 of 0
APPLY						

### Trusted IP List

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Trusted IP list. If enabled, only IP addresses in the Trusted IP table can access the device. Refer <u>Create a Trusted Access Entry</u> for more information. If this option is disabled, any IP address can access the device.	Enabled

## Accept All LAN Port Connections

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the device to accept all connections on the LAN interface.	Enabled
Log		
Setting	Description	Factory Default

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Trusted Access event logs.	Disabled

Severity				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Emergency				
Alert				
Critical				
Error	Colort the acception of the Trusted Assess event	Emergen et /		
Warning	Select the severity of the Trusted Access event.	Emergency		
Notice				
Informational				
Debug				

#### Log Destination

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local Storage, Syslog,	If Log is enabled, select the Trusted Access event log storage	None
Trap	location.	None

## **Create a Trusted Access Entry**

You can control which IP addresses can have access to the Moxa Industrial Secure Router by adding them to the Trusted Access list. If enabled, only addresses on the list will be allowed access to the Moxa Industrial Secure Router.

Click 🖬 to add an IP address to the Trusted Access list.

P Address *	nabled 👻
	P Address *
P Address *	
P Address ^	
	letmask *

Each IP address and netmask entry can be tailored to different situations:

- Grant access to one host with a specific IP address For example, enter IP address 192.168.1.1 with netmask 255.255.255.255 to allow access to 192.168.1.1 only.
- Grant access to any host on a specific subnetwork
   For example, enter IP address 192.168.1.0 with netmask 255.255.255.0 to allow access to all IPs on the subnet defined by this IP address/Netmask combination.
- Grant access to all hosts
   Disable the Trusted Access list. Select Disabled in Trusted IP List (Disabling this will allow all IP connections).

The following table shows additional configuration examples:

Hosts That Need Access	Input Format
Any host	Disable
192.168.1.120	192.168.1.120 / 255.255.255.255
192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.254	192.168.1.0 / 255.255.255.0
192.168.0.1 to 192.168.255.254	192.168.0.0 / 255.255.0.0
192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.126	192.168.1.0 / 255.255.255.128
192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254	192.168.1.128 / 255.255.255.128

Status				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Trusted Access entry.	None		
IP Address				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the Trusted host(s).	None		
Netmask				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Netmask	Specify the subnet mask of the Trusted host(s).	None		

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## Modify a Trusted Access Entry

Click the 🖍 next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Delete a Trusted Access Entry**

Select the entry from the Trusted Access List and click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon, then click **DELETE** to delete it.

# SSH & SSL

## SSH

The Industrial Secure Router will generate a SSH certificate automatically by default. If not, click **REGENERATE** to regenerate the SSH host key.

SSH & SSL					
SSH	SSL				
Created on Jul 8 13:10:45 2022	GMT				
Regenerate SSH Key					
REGENERATE					

# SSL

On the SSL page, you can generate an SSL certificate.

SSH	SSL	
Certificate Source *		
Auto Generate		v
Created on		
Jul 8 13:10:44 2022 GI	ΤN	
features.ssh_ssl.expired_date		
Jul 4 13:10:44 2036 GN	TN	

#### Certificate Source

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Auto Generate	The Industrial Secure Router will generate a certificate	
	automatically.	
	Select the certificate you want to import into the Local	Auto Generate
Local Certificate	Certificate Database. The certificate that can be loaded here is	Auto Generate
Database	limited to "Certificate from CSR" and "Certificate From	
	PKCS#12".	

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# Authentication

From the **Authentication** section, the following functions can be configured: **Login Authentication** and **RADIUS**.



# **Login Authentication**

# Login Authentication Authentication Protocol Local RADIUS RADIUS, Local PPLY

#### Authentical Protocol

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local		
RADIUS	Select the login authentication protocol for the device.	Local
RADIUS, Local		

# RADIUS

Users can set up two RADIUS servers, one primary and one secondary backup server. When the primary RADIUS server becomes unavailable, the Industrial Secure Router will switch to the backup RADIUS server.



## Note

For security reasons, it is recommended for administrators to periodically change the RADIUS server password.

# **RADIUS Server**

Disabled	•		
Authentication Type *			
EAP-PEAP MSCHA	Pv2 👻		
		UDP Port	
Server Address 1		1812	
		1 - 65535	
Share Key	8		
	0 / 60		
		UDP Port	
Server Address 2		1812	
		1 - 65535	
Share Key	Ø		

#### Authentication Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default		
PAP		EAP-PEAP		
CHAP	Select the authentication type for the RADIUS server.	MSCHAPv2		
EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2		INDUIAF VZ		

#### RADIUS Server Setting

KADIOS Server Setting		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Server Address 1/2	Specify the first and second RADIUS authentication server IP	None
(0 to 64)	address or server name.	None
UDP Port (1 to 65535)	Specify the first and second RADIUS server port number.	1812
Shared key (max. 60	Specify the shared key for the first and second RADIUS	None
characters)	server.	NUTE

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **MXview Alert Notification**



# NOTE

This function is only available for the OnCell G4300-LTE4 Series.

# **Security Notification Setting**

If event notifications are enabled, the Industrial Secure Router will send an SNMP Trap to notify the server.

# **MXview Alert Notification**

Firewall Event Notific	ation *	
Disabled	•	
DoS Attack Event Not	ification *	
Disabled	•	
Access Violation Eve	nt Notificat	
Disabled	*	
Login Fail Event Notif	ication *	
Disabled	-	

#### Firewall Event Notification

Firewaii Event Notification				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable notifications for Firewall events.	Disabled		
DoS Attack Event Notification				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable notifications for DoS attack events.	Disabled		
Enabled of Disabled		2.045.04		
Access Violation Ever	nt Notification			
		Factory Default		
Access Violation Ever	nt Notification			
Access Violation Even	<b>Notification</b> Description           Enable or disable notifications for Access Violation events.	Factory Default		
Access Violation Even Setting Enabled or Disabled	<b>Notification</b> Description           Enable or disable notifications for Access Violation events.	Factory Default		

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Security Status**

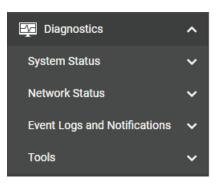
The Security Status screen shows the status of all event types. Click the **I** icon to clear all event statuses.

N	IXview Alert N	lotification	
	Security Notification Settin	g Security Status	
	Î.		Q Search
	Event	Status	
	Firewall	safe	
	DoS Attack	safe	
	Access Violation	safe	
	Login Fail	safe	
	Max. 10		Items per page: 50    1 − 4 of 4     < < > >

Through the Diagnostics section, you can keep track of the system and network performance, consult event logs, and check the status of the port connectors.

The Industrial Secure Router also provides **Port Mirror** and **Ping** tools for administrators to diagnose network systems.

From the **Diagnostics** section, you can configure the **System Status**, **Network Status**, **Event Logs and Notifications**, and **Tools** configurations.



# **System Status**

Users can monitor the data transmission activity of all the Industrial Secure Router ports from two perspectives, **Bandwidth Utilization** and **Packet Counter**. The graph displays data transmission activity by showing Utilization/Sec or Packet/Sec (i.e., packets per second, or pps) versus Min:Sec. (Minutes: Seconds). The graph is updated every 5 seconds, allowing the user to analyze data transmission activity in real-time.

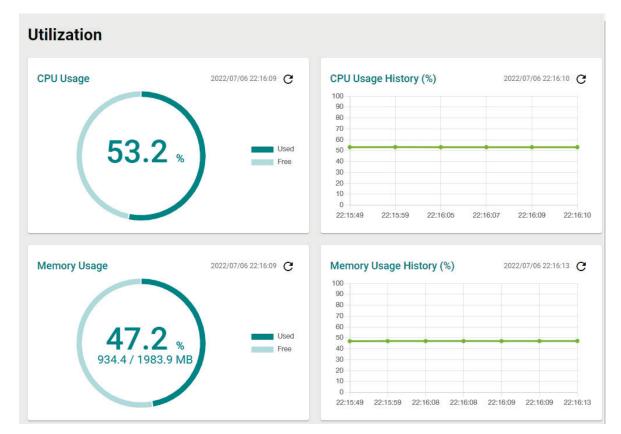
From the System Status section, the following functions can be configured: Utilization.



# Utilization

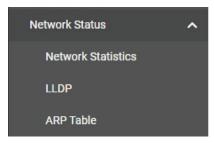
On the **Utilization** page, you can view the system resource utilization history, including the current and historical CPU and memory usage.

Click the  ${f C}$  icon on the upper-right corner of each graph to refresh the data.



# **Network Status**

From the **Network Status** section, the following functions can be configured: **Network Statistics, LLDP,** and **ARP Table**.



# **Network Statistics**

The Network Statistics page shows the Packet Counter status by default.

To switch views, click the **Packet Counter** drop-down menu and select **Bandwidth Utilization** to see the current bandwidth usage.

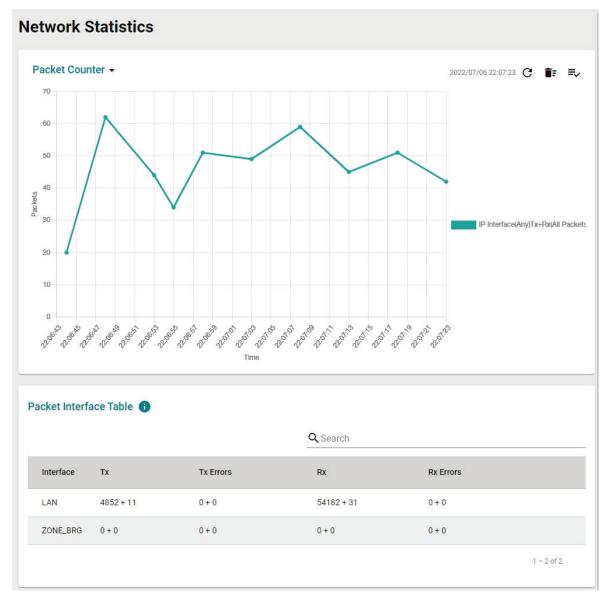
Network Statistics		

#### Display Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select which statistics to show.	
Packet Counter,	Refer to the following sections for more information:	De alvati Cavatav
Bandwidth Utilization	Packet Counter	Packet Counter
	Bandwidth Utilization	

# **Packet Counter**

In the **Packet Counter** view, users can monitor the total amount of packets per second for each interface (**IP Interface**), each port, or port group (**Ports**). Users can choose which packet flows to monitor, **TX Packets**, **RX Packets**, or both (**TX/RX**). **TX Packets** are packets sent out from the Industrial Secure Router while **RX Packets** are packets received from connected devices. Additionally, users can also choose which packet types to monitor, including unicast, broadcast, multicast, and error.



There are three function icons in the upper-right corner of the page. The table below provides a description for each function.

Ic	on	Name	Description
	C Refresh		Refresh all statistical data immediately.
	Î.	Reset Statistics Graph	Click this icon, then click CLEAR to clear the packet counter and reset the graph.
	≡,∕		Configure which information is shown on the graph. Refer to <u>Display Settings</u> for more information.

# **Display Settings**

Display Setting	S		
Display Type *			
IP Interface	•		
Interface Selection *			
Any	•		
Sniffer Mode *			
Tx+Rx	•		
Package Type *			
All Packets			

## Display Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Port	Monitor the total traffic per port or port group (FE Ports/GbE ports).	IP Interface
IP Interface	Monitor the total traffic per interface, e.g. LAN, WAN, Bridge.	

#### Interface Selection

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	If Display Type is set to IP Interface, select which interface to monitor traffic for.	Any

#### Port Selection

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All ports, FE Ports,		
GE Ports, Port 1, Port	If Display Type is set to Port, select which port or port group to monitor traffic for.	
2, Port 3, Port 4, Port		All ports
5, Port 6, Port 7, Port		
8, Port G1, Port G2		

#### Sniffer Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
TX+RX, TX, RX	Select which packet flow to monitor.	TX+RX

#### Packet Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All Packets, Unicast,		
Broadcast, Multicast,	Select which packet type to monitor.	All Packets
Error Packets		

When finished, click **ADD** to save your display settings.

Each type of data is represented by a different color, as shown below:

IP Interface(Any)Tx+Rx(All Packets)
Port(All)Tx+Rx(Unicast)
Port(All)Tx+Rx(Broadcast)
Port(All)Tx+Rx(Multicast)
Port(All)Tx+Rx(Error Packets)

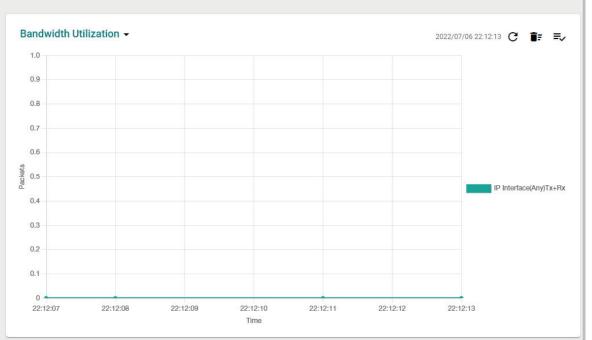
## Packet Interface Table

The packet flow format is Total Packets + Packets in the past 5 seconds. The data is updated every 5 seconds.

# **Bandwidth Utilization**

Select **Bandwidth Utilization** from the drop-down menu in the **Network Statistics** page to view the current bandwidth usage.

# **Network Statistics**



There are three function icons in the upper-right corner of the page. The table below provides a description for each function.

Icon		Name	Description
(	3	Refresh	Refresh all statistical data immediately.
í	ĪF	Reset Statistics Granh	Click this icon, then click CLEAR to clear the bandwidth usage data and reset the graph.
Ξ	=,	Disniav Settings	Configure which information is shown on the graph. Refer to <u>Display Settings</u> for more information.

# **Display Settings**

Display Settin	gs	
Display Type IP Interface	•	
Interface Selection *		
Any	•	
Sniffer Mode *		
Tx+Rx	Ŧ	

## Display Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Port	Monitor the total traffic per port or port group (FE Ports/GbE ports).	IP Interface
IP Interface	Monitor the total traffic per interface, e.g. LAN, WAN, Bridge.	

#### Interface Selection

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any, LAN, WAN, Bridge LAN	Select which interface to monitor traffic for.	Any

#### Sniffer Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
TX+RX, TX, RX	Select which packet flow to monitor.	TX+RX

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{ADD}}$  to save your display settings.

# LLDP

# **LLDP Function Overview**

Defined by IEEE 802.11AB, Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) is an OSI Layer 2 protocol that standardizes the methodology of self-identity advertisement. It allows each networking device, such as a Moxa managed switch/router, to periodically inform its neighbors about itself and its configuration. This way, all devices are aware of each other.

LLDP can be enabled or disabled. Additionally, users can configure the interval at which LLDP packets are sent and view each switch's neighbor-list, which is reported by its network neighbors.

# **LLDP Settings**

LDP			
Settings		Status	
LLDP			
Enabled	•		
Transmit Interval 30			
5 - 32768	sec.		
APPLY			

## LLDP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the LLDP function.	Enabled
Transmit Interval		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
5 to 32768 seconds	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which LLDP messages are sent.	30 (seconds)

# **LLDP Status**

LLDP								
Settings	Status							
G		QS	earch					
Port Nbr. ID	Nbr. Port	Nbr. Port Description	Nbr. System					
			Items per page: 50 🔹	0 of 0	1<	<	>	>

The LLDP table displays the following information:

Field	Description
Port	The port number that connects to the neighbor device.
Neighbor ID	A unique identifier (typically the MAC address) that identifies the neighbor device.
Neighbor Port	The port number of the connecting neighbor device.
Neighbor Port Description	The description of the neighbor device's interface.
Neighbor System	The hostname of the neighbor device.

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the table.

# **ARP Table**

The ARP table shows the device's Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) information.

C				Q Search	
Index	MAC Address	IP Address	Interface		
1	d8:5e:d3:2b:28:1d	192.168.127.197	LAN		
2	b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85	192.168.127.125	LAN		

# **Event Logs and Notifications**

From the **Event Logs and Notifications** section, the following functions can be configured: **Event Log**, **Event Notification**, **Syslog**, **SNMP Trap/Inform**, **Email Settings**, and **SMS Settings**.

Event Logs and Notifications	^
Event Log	
Event Notifications	
Syslog	
SNMP Trap/Inform	
Email Settings	
SMS Settings	

# **Event Log**



## Note

The timestamp on event logs will automatically synchronize with the NTP/SNTP server and applies to all new event logs.

# System Log

By default, the **System Log** shows details of all system-related event logs.

/ent L	og				
System	Log Firewal	Log	VPN Log	Settings and Backup	
C i	:= ₽				<b>Q</b> Search
Index	Timestamp	Severity	Additional message		
1	1970/1/8 4:3:22+8:00	Info	Auth Ok, Login Succes	ss via UI: Web. Account=adm	in, Bootup=7, Startup=4d6h25m16s
2	1970/1/8 4:3:16+8:00	Info	Logout via UI: Web. Ad	ccount=admin, Bootup=7, Sta	rtup=4d6h25m10s
3	1970/1/8 3:53:31+8:00	Info	[Cellular] Cellular Mod	ule Disabled, Bootup=7, Start	tup=4d6h15m25s
4	1970/1/8 3:53:31+8:00	Warning	Configuration Change	via UI: Web. , Account=admir	n, Bootup=7, Startup=4d6h15m25s
5	1970/1/8 3:52:26+8:00	Warning	[Cellular] Guaranlink T	rigger ISP Reregister, Bootup	=7, Startup=4d6h14m20s

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the system logs.

Click the  $\mathbf{\hat{I}}$  icon to delete all system logs.

Click the 🖸 icon to export all system logs to a file.

# **Firewall Log**

From the **Firewall Log** page, you can check the various types of firewall event logs. By default, the firewall logs of the Layer 3–7 Policy will be displayed.

Click the **Layer 3–7 Policy** drop-down menu to select and show the firewall logs for other policy patterns, including:

- Trusted Access
- Malformed Packets
- DoS Policy
- Layer 3 7 Policy
- Protocol Filter Policy
- ADP
- Session Control
- Layer 2 Policy

ayer 3-7 Pol									Q Se	arch		
	īmestamp	Severity	Policy ID	Policy Name	Ether Type	Incoming Interface	Source MAC	Source IP	Source	Outgoing Interface	Destination IP	Des'

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the firewall logs.

Click the **I** icon to delete all firewall logs.

Click the 🖸 icon to export all firewall logs to a file.

# **VPN Log**

The **VPN Log** table shows details for all VPN-related event logs.

ent Log				
System Log	Firewall Log	VPN Log	Settings and Backup	
C 🗊 🛛				Q Search
Index Timesta	mp Severity	Additional message		
				ltems per page: 50 👻 0 of 0   ♦

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the VPN logs.

Click the **I** icon to delete all VPN logs.

Click the 🖸 icon to export all VPN logs to a file.

# **Settings and Backup**

On the **Settings and Backup** screen, users can clear all logs, enable automatic log backups, and configure capacity warnings and oversize actions that trigger when the log storage has exceeded the specified storage threshold.

ent Log				
System Log	Firewall Log	VPN Log So	ettings and Backup	
ear All Log CLEAR				
uto Backup of tomatically Restore sabled APPLY	Event Log			
nreshold Settir C	ıgs			
	IGS Category Name	Warning Threshold	Oversize Action	Registered Action
G		Warning Threshold 0%	Oversize Action Overwrite the oldest event log	Registered Action Trap,Email
C Status	Category Name			
C Status Status	Category Name System	0%	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email
C Status Status Disabled Disabled	Category Name System VPN	0%	Overwrite the oldest event log Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email Trap,Email
C Status Status Disabled Disabled	Category Name System VPN Trusted Access	0%	Overwrite the oldest event log Overwrite the oldest event log Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email Trap,Email Trap,Email
C Status Status Disabled Disabled Disabled	Category Name System VPN Trusted Access Malformed Packets	0% 0% 0%	Overwrite the oldest event log         Overwrite the oldest event log         Overwrite the oldest event log         Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email Trap,Email Trap,Email Trap,Email

#### Clear All Log

Click **CLEAR** to immediately clear all event logs.

#### Auto Event Log Backup

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable automatic event log backups.	Disabled

## Threshold Settings

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the threshold settings.

# Modify an Event Threshold Setting

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify.

Capacity Warning *			
Disabled	•		
Warning Threshold O			
50 - 100	%		
Registered Action			
Trap, Email	•		
Oversize Action *			
Overwrite the oldest ev	ent log	-	

#### Capacity Warning

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable capacity warnings. The Registered Action can be configured for individual events by editing the event on the <u>Event Notifications</u> page.	Disabled

#### Warning Threshold

Setting	Description	Factory Default
50 to 100 %	Specify the threshold percentage of the current storage. Once	٥
50 10 100 %	the storage exceeds this value, the warning will trigger.	0

#### **Registered Action**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Trap, Email	Select how the warning is sent.	Trap, Email
Oversize Action		

Oversize Action		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Overwrite the oldest event log, Stop recording event logs	Select the oversize action when the log storage is full.	Overwrite the oldest event log

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Event Notifications**

Since industrial Ethernet devices are often located at the endpoints of a system, these devices will not always know what is happening elsewhere on the network. This means that an industrial secure router that connects to these devices must provide system maintainers with real-time alarm messages. Even when control engineers are out of the control room for an extended period of time, they can still be informed of the status of devices almost instantaneously when exceptions occur. The Moxa industrial secure router supports different methods to warn engineers automatically, such as email, trap, syslog and relay output. It also supports one digital input to integrate sensors into your system to automate alarms by email and relay output.

# System Event Settings

System Events are related to the overall functions of the device. Each event can be activated independently with different warning methods. Administrators also can decide the severity of each system event.

## **Event Notifications**

Sys	stem	Port			
	Status	Group	Event Name	Severity	Registered Action
1	Disabled	General	Cold Start	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	Warm Start	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	Power 1 Transition (On->Off)	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	Power 1 Transition (Off->On)	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	Power 2 Transition (On->Off)	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	Power 2 Transition (Off->On)	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	Configuration Changed	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	Login Failure	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	802.1x Authentication Failure	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	Firmware Upgrade Success	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	Firmware Upgrade Failure	Emergency	
1	Disabled	General	Log Service Ready	Emergency	

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify.

Edit Event Notifi	cation		
Event Name			
Cold Start			
Status *			
Disabled	*		
Registered Action	•		
Severity *			

#### Event Name

System Events	Description
General	Cold Start
General	Warm Start

System Events	Description
General	Power 1 Transition (On to Off)
General	Power 1 Transition (Off to On)
General	Power 2 Transition (On to Off)
General	Power 2 Transition (Off to On)
General	DI (Off)
General	DI (On)
General	Config. Change
General	Auth. Failure
General	802.1X Auth. Failure
General	Firmware Upgrade Success
General	Firmware Upgrade Failure
Redundancy	VRRP State Change
VPN	VPN Connected
VPN	VPN Disconnected
Firewall	Firewall Policy
Power Management	Power Saving Start
Power Management	Power Saving End
Power Management	Scheduling Rule Expired
SMS	Wrong Password
SMS	Wrong Command
SMS	Wrong Format
SMS	Command Disabled
SMS	Trusted Number Authentication Fail
Cellular	IP Change
Cellular	Cellular Module Fail
Cellular	SIM detect Fail
Cellular	PIN code Fail
Cellular	SIM switch
Cellular	GuaranLink Cellular Reconnect
Cellular	Guaranlink Trigger ISP Reregister
Cellular	Guaranlink Trigger Cellular Module Reset
Cellular	Guaranlink Trigger System Reboot
WAN Redundancy	WAN Interface Change
WAN Redundancy	WAN Interface Ping Fail

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable system event notifications.	Disabled

## **Registered Action**

There are five response actions available on the Industrial Secure Router when events are triggered.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Tran	The notification is sent to the Trap server when the event is	
Trap	triggered.	
Email	The notification is sent to the email server defined in the Email	
Lillall	Settings section.	
Suclea	The event log is recorded to a Syslog server defined in the	Nono
Syslog	Syslog section.	None
	The industrial secure router supports digital inputs to integrate	
Relay	sensors. When event is triggered, the device will automate	
	alarm notifications through the relay output.	
SMS	The event log is sent through SMS defined in the <u>SMS</u> section.	

Severity

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Emergency	System is unusable	
Alert	Action must be taken immediately	Emergency
Critical	Critical conditions	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Error	Error conditions	
Warning	Warning conditions	
Notice	Normal but significant condition	
Info	Informational messages	
Debug	Debug-level messages	

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{APPLY}}$  to save your changes.

# **Port Event Settings**

Port Events are related to the activity of a specific port.

Ever	nt Notific	catio	ns			
	System		Port			
	Enable	Port	Link-On	Link-Off	Severity	Registered Action
-	Disabled	1/1	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
-	Disabled	1/2	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify.

Edit Event Notifi	cation		
Port			
1/1			
Enabled *			
Disabled	<b>•</b>		
Link-On *			
Disabled	*		
Link-Off *			
Disabled	•		
Registered Action		*	
Severity *			
Emergency	•		
		CANCEL	APPLY

#### Port

This is the physical port on the Industrial Secure Router.

#### Enabled

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable event notifications for the port.	Disabled
Link-On		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Link-On events. If enabled, an event is triggered when the port is connected to another device.	Disabled
Link-Off		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Link-Off events. If enabled, an event is triggered when the port is disconnected (e.g., the cable is	Disabled

#### **Registered** Action

There are five response actions available on the Industrial Secure Router when events are triggered.

unplugged, or the connected device is shut down).

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Tran	The notification is sent to the Trap server when the event is	
Trap	triggered.	
Email	The notification is sent to the email server defined in the Email	
Email	Settings section.	
Syslog	The event log is recorded to a Syslog server defined in the	None
Sysiog	Syslog section.	
	The industrial secure router supports digital inputs to integrate	
Relay	sensors. When event is triggered, the device will automate	
	alarm notifications through the relay output.	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
SMS	The event log is sent through SMS defined in the <u>SMS</u> section.	

Severity				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Emergency	System is unusable			
Alert	Action must be taken immediately			
Critical	Critical conditions			
Error	Error conditions	Emergency		
Warning	Warning conditions	Emergency		
Notice	Normal but significant condition			
Info	Informational messages			
Debug	Debug-level messages			

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# Syslog

The Syslog function is used to set up Syslog servers for storing event logs. Up to three Syslog servers can be set up. When an event occurs, the event will be sent as a syslog UDP packet to the specified Syslog servers. Each Syslog server can be enabled individually.

The administrator can manually import a self-signed certificate for syslog client services. However, the administrator should check the root certificate and validity of the signature before importing, according to the organization's security procedures and requirements. After importing a certificate, the administrator should check if the certificate has been revoked and if so, the certificate must be replaced. When the device sends the imported certificate to the syslog server, the syslog server will attempt to verify the certificate by searching the approved certificate pool on the server to identify the imported certificate.



## Note

- 1. The encryption algorithm of keys should be selected based on internationally recognized and proven security practices and recommendations.
- 2. The lifetime of certificates generated for syslog client services should be short and in accordance with the organization's security procedures and requirements.

# Note

For security reasons, it is recommended to send event logs to a centralized Syslog server for continuous network event monitoring.

# Syslog

Syslog 1		Certificate 1	
Disabled	*	Disabled	-
		UDP Port 1	
Address 1		514	
		1 - 65535	
Syslog 2		Certificate 2	
Disabled	*	Disabled	-
		UDP Port 2	
Address 2		514	
		1 - 65535	
Syslog 3		Certificate 3	
Disabled	*	Disabled	*
		UDP Port 3	
Address 3		514	
		1 - 65535	
APPLY			

## Syslog 1/2/3

Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Syslog server.	Disabled		

#### Address 1/2/3

Add(C55 1/ 2/ 0				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Address 1/2/3	Enter the IP address of the Syslog server.	None		

# *Certificate 1/2/3C*

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the use of Syslog server certificates. If enabled, select a previously imported certificate.	Disabled

UDP Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the UDP port of the Syslog server.	514

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# SNMP Trap/Inform

# **General Settings**

General	S	NMP Account	
rap Mode *			
rap V1	•		
rap Community 1 *			
0 /	/ 30		
Recipient IP/Name 1		Recipient IP/Na	ame 2
Distant ID (Normal)			
Recipient IP/Name 3			
nform Retries		Inform Timeout	
)		0	

## Trap Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Trap V1	Set the Trap version to Trap V1.	
Trap V2	Set the Trap version to Trap v2.	
Inform V2	Set the Inform version to Inform V2.	Trap V1
Trap V3	Set the Trap version to Trap V3.	
Inform V3	Set the Inform version to Inform V3.	

### Trap Community 1

Setting	Description	Factory Default
max. 30 characters	Specify the community string that will be used for authentication.	public

### Recipient IP/Name 1/2/3

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Recipient IP or name	Specify the name of the primary Trap server used by your network.	None

## Inform Retries

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 99 times	Specify the allowed number of retries for attempting to	0
1 to 99 times	reconnect to a server.	0

## Inform Timeout

Setting	Description	Factory Default		
1 to 300 seconds.	Set the retry interval when trying to reconnect to a server.	0		

# **SNMP** Account

SNM	P Trap/I	nform									
C	General	SNMP Account									
				-	<b>2</b> , Search						
	Name	Authen	tication Type	Encryption	n Method						
Max.	1				Items per page:	50 💌	0 of 0	<	<	>	×

## **Create a SNMP Trap Account**

Click the 🖿 icon to create a SNMP Trap account.

Name *				
0/31				
Authentication Type *				
None -				
Encryption Method *				
Disabled 💌	0			

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
max. 31 characters	Enter a name for the account.	None

#### Authentication Type

	<i>71</i>	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
None	No authentication type will be used.	
MD5	Use MD5 authentication.	None
SHA	Use SHA authentication.	

#### **Encryption Method**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Disabled	Disable the encryption method.	
DES	Use DES encryption.	None
AES	Use AES encryption.	

If the Authentication Type is set to **MD5** or **SHA**, and the Encryption Method is set to **Enabled**, also configure the following settings:

Create SNMP T	rap Ad	ccount Settings		
Name * User-01				
	7/31			
Authentication Type MD5		Authentication Key	* *	
		At least 8 characters	0/30	
Encryption Method * Enabled	•	Encryption Key *	Q 🔒	
		At least 8 characters	0 / 30	
			CANCEL	CREATE

Create SNMP Trap	Account Settings		
Name *			
User-01			
7/3	l.		
Authentication Type			
SHA	Authentication Key	<b>S</b> * V	
	At least 8 characters	0/30	
Encryption Method *			
Enabled	Encryption Key *	Q 🚺	
	At least 8 characters	0/30	
		CANCEL	CREATE

Setting	Description	Factory Defaul
8 to 30 characters	Enter the authentication password.	None
Encryption Key		
Encryption Key Setting	Description	Factory Defau

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the SNMP Trap account.

## Modify an Existing SNMP Trap Account

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# Delete an Existing SNMP Trap Account

Select the item(s) in the SNMP Trap account List. Click the **i** icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

# **Email Settings**

# **Email Settings**

0 / 60	
TCP Port	
25	
1 - 65535	
Username	Password
0 / 60	0 / 60
Sender Address	
1st Recipient Email Add	2nd Recipient Email Ad
0/60	0 / 60
07.00	
	4th Recipient Email Add

#### Mail Server

Mall Server		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 60 characters	Enter the email server address.	None
TCP Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the TCP port of the email server.	25
Username		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 60 characters	Enter the username used to log in to the email server.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 60 characters	Enter the password used to log in to the email server.	None
Sender Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 60 characters	Enter the sender's email address.	None
1st/2nd/3rd/4th Re	ecipient Email Address	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Enter the recipient address. You can set up to 4 email	
Max. 60 characters	addresses to receive alarm emails from the Industrial Secure Router.	None

#### Send Test Email

After configuring the email settings, click **APPLY** to apply the settings. Press **SEND TEST EMAIL** to verify that the settings are working correctly.



#### NOTE

Auto warning e-mail messages will be sent through an authentication-protected SMTP server that supports the CRAM-MD5, LOGIN, and PAIN methods of SASL (Simple Authentication and Security Layer) authentication mechanism.

We strongly recommend not entering your Account Name and Account Password if auto warning e-mail messages can be delivered without using an authentication mechanism.

# **SMS Settings**

From the **SMS Settings** screen, you can configure up to four SMS recipients.

SI	MS Se	ttings			
	٥				
		Name	Country Code	Number	
	Max. 4				

## Add an SMS Recipient

Click the **Add** ( •) icon to add a new entry.

Add SMS Number Entr	гу		
Name *			
0 / 15			
+ Country Code *	Number *		
		CANCEL	APPLY

Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 15 characters	Enter the SMS recipient's name.	None
Country Code		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Country code	Enter the SMS recipient number's country code.	None
Number		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Phone number	Enter the SMS recipient's phone number.	None

### **Modify an SMS Recipient**

Click the pencil (  $\checkmark$  ) icon next to the entry you want to edit.

Add SMS Number Entr	гу		
Name *			
0/15			
+ Country Code *	Number *		
		CANCEL	APPLY

#### Name

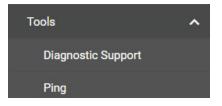
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 15 characters	Enter the SMS recipient's name.	None
Country Code		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Country code	Enter the SMS recipient number's country code.	None
Number		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Phone number	Enter the SMS recipient's phone number.	None

#### **Delete an SMS Recipient**

Select the item(s) in the SMS recipient List. Click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

# Tools

From the **Tools** section, the following functions can be configured: **Diagnostic Support**, and **Ping**.



## **Diagnostic Support**

### **System Profile**

From the System Profile screen, users can generate the device information including system logs, system status, and configurations to a file for troubleshooting purposes.

Diagnostic Support				
System Profile	Module Firmware			
Generate Profile Please provide the exported file to Moxa technical support for troubleshooting.				
GENERATE				

### **Module Firmware**

From the Module Firmware screen, users can upgrade the firmware of the cellular module using a firmware file provided by Moxa Technical Support.

System Profile	Module Firmware	
Module Firmware	Upgrade	
Select File		
UPGRADE		

## Ping

Ping		
IP Address/Domain Name *		
PING	0 / 50	
Ping result		~

The Ping function uses the ping command to give users a simple but powerful tool for troubleshooting network problems. The function's most unique feature is that even though the ping command is entered from the user's PC keyboard, the actual ping command originates from the Industrial Secure Router itself. In this way, the user can essentially control the Industrial Secure Router and send ping commands out through its ports.:

Type in the desired IP address and click **Ping**. The result of the ping will be displayed in the section below.

## Ping

Ping	
IP Address/Domain Name * 192.168.127.254	
15 / 50	
PING	
Ping 192.168.127.254 result	^
Ping to 192.168.127.254, Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0	

The Industrial Secure Router comes with built-in SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) agent software that supports cold start trap, line up/down trap, and RFC 1213 MIB-II. The standard MIB groups that the Industrial Secure Router series support are:

#### MIB II.1 – System Group

sysORTable

#### MIB II.2 – Interfaces Group

ifTable

#### <u> MIB II.4 – IP Group</u>

ipAddrTable

ipNetToMediaTable

IpGroup

IpBasicStatsGroup

IpStatsGroup

#### <u>MIB II.5 – ICMP Group</u>

IcmpGroup

IcmpInputStatus

IcmpOutputStats

#### MIB II.6 – TCP Group

tcpConnTable

TcpGroup

TcpStats

#### <u>MIB II.7 – UDP Group</u>

udpTable

UdpStats

#### <u> MIB II.11 – SNMP Group</u>

SnmpBasicGroup

SnmpInputStats

#### SnmpOutputStats

#### Public Traps

- 1. Cold Start
- 2. Link Up
- 3. Link Down
- 4. Authentication Failure

#### Private Traps:

- 1. Configuration Changed
- 2. Power On
- 3. Power Off
- 4. DI Trap

This appendix lists the privileges for the different account roles.

# **User Role Privileges**

The following table lists the privileges of the different user roles for the functions of the device.

#### Note

The User Role Privileges are fixed and cannot be changed. If your application has specific privilege requirements, please contact Moxa for customization support.

The table uses the follow letter designations:

- **R**: Read-only privilege
- W: Write privilege
- **R/W**: Read/write privilege

Function	Account Privilege		
System	Admin	Supervisor	User
System Management			
- Information Settings	R/W	R/W	R
- Firmware Upgrade	R/W	No Access	No Access
- Software Package Management	R/W	No Access	No Access
- Configuration Backup and Restore	R/W	No Access	No Access
Account Management	·	·	·
- User Account	R/W	No Access	No Access
- Password Policy	R/W	No Access	No Access
License Management	R/W	R	R
Management Interface	·	·	·
- User Interface	R/W	R/W	R
- Hardware Interface	R/W	R/W	R
- SNMP	R/W	No Access	No Access
- MXsecurity	R/W	R/W	No Access
Time	·	·	·
- System Time	R/W	R/W	R
- NTP/SNTP Server	R/W	R/W	R
Setting Check	R/W	R/W	R
Power Management	R/W	R/W	R
SMS	R/W	R/W	R
GNSS	R/W	R/W	R
Cellular	Admin	Supervisor	User
Cellular	R/W	R/W	R
Serial	Admin	Supervisor	User
Serial	R/W	R/W	R
Network Configuration	Admin	Supervisor	User
Port			
- Port Settings	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 2 Switching			
- VLAN	R/W	R/W	R
- MAC Address Table	R/W	R/W	R

Function	Account Privil	200	
- Multicast	R/W	R/W	R
Network Interface	R/W	R/W	R
Redundancy	Admin	Supervisor	User
Layer 3 Redundancy		Supervisor	0301
- VRRP	R/W	R/W	R
WAN Redundancy	R/W	R/W	R
Network Service	Admin	Supervisor	User
DHCP Server	R/W	R/W	R
Dynamic DNS	R/W	R/W	R
Routing	Admin	Supervisor	User
Unicast Routing		oupernoor	
- Static Routes	R/W	R/W	R
- Routing Table	R	R	R
Multicast Route			
- Multicast Route Settings	R/W	R/W	R
- Static Multicast Route	R/W	R/W	R
Broadcast Forwarding	R/W	R/W	R
NAT	Admin	Supervisor	User
NAT Setting	R/W	R/W	R
Object Management	Admin	Supervisor	User
Object Management	R/W	R/W	R
Firewall	Admin	Supervisor	User
Layer 2 Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 3 - 7 Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Malformed Packets	R/W	R/W	R
Session Control	R/W	R/W	R
DoS Policy	R/W	R/W	R
VPN	Admin	Supervisor	User
IPsec	R/W	R/W	R
	Admin		User
Certification Management Local Certificate	Admin	Supervisor No Access	
Certification Management	Admin R/W	Supervisor	User
Certification Management Local Certificate	Admin	Supervisor No Access	User No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate	Admin R/W R/W	SupervisorNo AccessNo AccessNo AccessNo Access	User No Access No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security	Admin R/W R/W R/W	Supervisor No Access No Access	User           No Access           No Access           No Access           No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request	Admin R/W R/W R/W	SupervisorNo AccessNo AccessNo AccessNo Access	User           No Access           No Access           No Access           No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security	Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R	User No Access No Access No Access User
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy	Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin	Supervisor No Access No Access No Access Supervisor	User No Access No Access No Access User
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access	Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin R/W R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W	User         No Access         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL	Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin R/W R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W	User         No Access         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication	Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin R/W R/W R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         R/W	User         No Access         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication	Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin R/W R/W R/W R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         R/W         No Access	User         No Access         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W	User         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         No Access         No Access         R         R         R         R         No Access         No Access         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         No Access	User         No Access         No Access         Vo Access         User         R         R         No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W	User         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         No Access         No Access         R         R         R         R         No Access         No Access         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status	Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin R/W R/W R/W R/W R/W R/W Admin	Supervisor No Access No Access No Access Supervisor R R/W R/W No Access No Access R/W Supervisor	User         No Access         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization	Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin R/W R/W R/W R/W R/W R/W Admin	Supervisor No Access No Access No Access Supervisor R R/W R/W No Access No Access R/W Supervisor	User         No Access         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Status	Admin R/W R/W Admin R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         Supervisor	User         No Access         No Access         Vo Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         No Access         No Access         R         User         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Status - Network Statistics	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           R	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R/W         R         R	User         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         No Access         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Statustics - LLDP	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R/W         No Access         R/W	User         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R/W         No Access         R/W	User         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         No Access         No Access         R/W         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W	User         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Log	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           R           R/W           R           R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R         R/W	User         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         R         Vo Access         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Log - Event Log - Event Notifications - Event Notifications - Event Notifications - Syslog	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R         R/W         R         R         R	User         No Access         No Access         Vo Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         R         User         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Notifications - Event Notifications - Event Notifications - Syslog - SNMP Trap/Inform	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R         R         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R <td>User         No Access         No Access         Vo Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         R</td>	User         No Access         No Access         Vo Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Log - Event Notifications - Syslog - SNMP Trap/Inform - Email Settings	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W <td>Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         No Access         No Access</td> <td>User         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         No Access</td>	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         No Access         No Access	User         No Access         No Access         User         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log - Event Log - Event Notifications - Syslog - SNMP Trap/Inform - Email Settings - SMS Settings	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W      R/W	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         No Access         R         NO         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         No Access         R         No Access         R	User         No Access         No Access         Vo Access         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         No Access         R         No Access
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Authentication - Login Authentication RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Log - Event Notifications - Syslog - SNMP Trap/Inform - Email Settings	Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W <td>Supervisor         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         No Access         R         NO         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         No Access         R         No Access         R</td> <td>User         No Access         No Access         Vo Access         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         No Access         R         No Access</td>	Supervisor         No Access         No Access         Supervisor         R         R/W         No Access         No Access         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         No Access         R         NO         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         No Access         R         No Access         R	User         No Access         No Access         Vo Access         R         R         No Access         No Access         No Access         R         No Access         R         No Access

Function	Account Privilege		
- Ping	R/W	R/W	R

This appendix explains security practices for installing, operating, maintaining, and decommissioning the device. Moxa strongly recommends that our customers follow these guidelines to enhance network and equipment security.

# Installation

## **Physical Installation**

- 1. The device MUST be installed in an access-controlled area, where only the necessary personnel have physical access to the device.
- 2. The device MUST be installed at the security perimeter or the boundary between different zones to provide network segmentation.
- 3. Please follow the instructions in the Quick Installation Guide, which is included in the package, to ensure you install the device correctly in your environment.
- 4. The device has anti-tamper labels on the enclosures. This allows an administrator to tell whether the device has been tampered with.
- 5. The ports that are not in use should be deactivated. Please refer to the <u>Ports</u> section for detailed instructions.

## **Account Management**

Follow these best practices when setting up an account:

- 1. Each account should be assigned the correct privileges: Only allow the minimum number of people to have admin privilege so they can perform device configuration or modifications, while other users should only have read access privilege. The device supports both local account authentication and a remote centralized mechanism, including RADIUS.
- 2. Change the default password, and strengthen the account password complexity by:
  - a. Enabling the "Password Policy" function.
  - b. Increasing the minimum password length to at least eight characters.
  - c. Defining a password policy to ensure that it contains at least an uppercase and lowercase letter, a digit, and a special character.
  - d. Setting user passwords to expire after a certain period of time.
- 3. Enforce regulations that ensure that only a trusted host can access the device. Please refer to the <u>Trusted Access</u> section for detailed instructions.

## **Vulnerable Network Ports**

- 1. For network security concerns, we strongly recommend that you change the port numbers, such as TCP port numbers for HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, and SSH, for the protocols that are in use. Ports that are not in use but are still reachable pose an unacceptable security risk and should be disabled. Refer to the <u>Management Interface</u> section for detailed instructions.
- In order to avoid eavesdroppers from snooping confidential information, users should adopt encryptionbased communication protocols, such as HTTPS instead of HTTP, SSH instead of Telnet, SFTP instead of TFTP, SNMPv3 instead of SNMPv1/v2c, etc. In addition, the maximum number of sessions should be kept to an absolute minimum. Please refer to the <u>Management Interface</u> section for detailed instructions.

3. Users should generate the SSL certificate for the device before commissioning HTTPS or SSH applications. Please refer to the <u>SSH & SSL</u> section for detailed instructions.

# Operation

 In order to ensure that communications are properly protected, use a strong cryptographic algorithm for key exchange or encryption protocols for HTTPS/SSH applications. The device follows the NIST SP800-52 and SP800-131 standards and supports TLS v1.2 and v1.3 with the following cipher suites:

#### TLS V1.2

Cypher Suite Name	Key Exchange	Authentication	Encryption	Hash Function
TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_PO	ECDHE	RSA	CHACHA20-	SHA256
LY1305_SHA256			POLY1305	
TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_G CM_SHA256	ECDHE	ECDSA	AES128	SHA256
TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM _SHA256	ECDHE	RSA	AES128	SHA256
TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM _SHA384	ECDHE	RSA	AES256	SHA384
TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_S HA256	Ephemeral DH	RSA	AES128	SHA256
TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_S HA384	Ephemeral DH	RSA	AES256	SHA384
TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY 1305_SHA256	Ephemeral DH	RSA	CHACHA20- POLY1305	SHA256
TLS_ECDHE-RSA_WITH_AES256- SHA384	ECDHE	RSA	AES256	SHA384
TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC _SHA256	ECDHE	RSA	AES128	SHA256
TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_CHACHA20_ POLY1305_SHA256	ECDHE	ECDSA	CHACHA20- POLY1305	SHA256
TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC _SHA384	ECDHE	RSA	AES256	SHA384
TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_C BC_SHA384	ECDHE	ECDSA	AES256	SHA384
TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_C BC_SHA256	ECDHE	ECDSA	AES128	SHA256

#### **TLS V1.3**

Cypher Suite Name	Key Exchange	Authentication	Encryption	Hash Function
TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384	Any	AES256	GCM	SHA384
TLS_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256	Any	CHACHA20- POLY1305	N/A	SHA256
TLS_AES_128_GCM_SHA256	Any	AES128	GCM	SHA256

2. Below is a list of the recommended secure browsers that support TLS v1.2 or above:

Browser	Version
Microsoft Edge	All
Microsoft Internet Explorer	v11 or above
Mozilla Firefox	v27 or above
Google Chrome	v38 or above
Apple Safari	v7 or above

Reference: <u>https://support.globalsign.com/ssl/general-ssl/tls-protocol-compatibility#Browsers</u>

3. The device supports event logs and syslog for SIEM integration:

a. Event log: Due to limited storage capacity, the event log can only accommodate a maximum of 1,000 entries per category. Administrators can set a warning for a pre-defined threshold. We

recommend that users regularly back up system event logs. Please refer to the <u>Event Log</u> section for detailed instructions.

- b. Syslog: the device supports syslog, and advanced secure TLS-based syslog for centralized SIEM integration. Please refer to the <u>Syslog</u> section for detailed instructions.
- 4. The device can provide information for control system inventory:
  - a. SNMPv1, v2c, v3: We recommend administrators use SNMPv3 with authentication and encryption to manage the network. Please refer to the <u>SNMP</u> for detailed instructions.
  - b. Telnet/SSH: We recommend that administrators use SSH with authentication and encryption to retrieve device properties.
  - c. HTTP/HTTPS: We recommend that administrators use HTTPS with a certificate that has been granted by a Certificate Authority to configure the device.
- 5. Denial of Service protection: To avoid disruption of the normal operation of the router, administrators should configure the QoS and DoS policy functions. The device supports ingress rate limiting and egress shaper. Administrators can decide how to deal with excess data flow and configure the device accordingly. This process will regulate the resulted data rate per port. Please refer to the QoS section for detailed instructions. Furthermore, the device provides 9 different DoS functions for detecting or defining abnormal packet formats or traffic flows. Please refer to the <u>DoS (Denial of Service) Policy</u> section for detailed instructions.
- 6. Time synchronization with authentication: Time synchronization is crucial for process control. To prevent malicious attacks whereby the settings are changed without permission, authentication must be in place between the NTP server and client. The device supports NTP with a pre-shared key. Please refer to the <u>Time</u> section for detailed instructions.
- Periodically regenerate the SSH and SSL certificates: Even though the device supports RSA 2048-bit and SHA-256 to ensure sufficient complexity, we strongly recommend that users frequently renew their SSH key and SSL certificate in case the key is compromised. Please refer to the <u>SSH & SSL</u> section for detailed instructions.

Protocol	Service Type	Port Number
ТСР	SSH	22
	Telnet	23
	HTTP	80
	HTTPS	443
UDP	DHCP	67
	NTP	123
	SNMP	161
	Moxa Service	40404

8. Below is the list for the protocol port numbers used for all external interfaces:

## Maintenance

- 1. Perform firmware upgrades frequently to enhance features, deploy security patches, or fix bugs.
- 2. Frequently back up the system configurations: In order to properly protect the system configuration files from being tampered with, the device supports password encryption and signature authentication for backup files.
- 3. Examine event logs frequently to detect any anomalies.
- 4. To report vulnerabilities of Moxa products, please submit your findings on the following web page: <a href="https://www.moxa.com/en/support/product-support/security-advisory/report-a-vulnerability">https://www.moxa.com/en/support/product-support/security-advisory/report-a-vulnerability</a>.

## Decommission

To avoid any sensitive information such as your account password or certificate from being disclosed, always reset the system settings to factory default before decommissioning the device.